

FORD **PUMA** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2023

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3833en-202301-20230112094146

Table of Contents

Introduction

| | |
|---|----|
| About This Publication | 19 |
| Using This Publication | 19 |
| Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication | 19 |

Data Privacy

| | |
|---|----|
| Data Privacy | 20 |
| Service Data | 21 |
| Event Data | 21 |
| Settings Data | 22 |
| Connected Vehicle Data | 22 |
| Mobile Device Data | 22 |
| Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall | 23 |

Environment

| | |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Protecting the Environment | 24 |
|----------------------------------|----|

Visual Search

| | |
|--|----|
| Steering Wheel - Excluding: ST | 25 |
| Steering Wheel - ST | 25 |
| Instrument Panel - LHD | 26 |
| Instrument Panel - RHD | 27 |
| Center Console - LHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: ST | 28 |
| Center Console - LHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: ST | 28 |
| Center Console - RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: ST | 29 |
| Center Console - RHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: ST | 29 |
| Center Console - ST, LHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid | 30 |
| Center Console - ST, LHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid | 30 |

| | |
|---|----|
| Center Console - ST, RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid | 31 |
|---|----|

| | |
|--|----|
| Center Console - ST, RHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid | 31 |
|--|----|

Child Safety

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| Child Safety Precautions | 32 |
| Child Restraint Anchor Points | 33 |
| Child Restraints | 34 |
| Booster Seats | 37 |
| Child Safety Locks | 38 |

Seatbelts

| | |
|--|----|
| Seatbelt Precautions | 39 |
| Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts | 39 |
| Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy | 39 |
| Adjusting the Seatbelt Height | 40 |
| Seatbelt Reminder | 40 |
| Seatbelts – Troubleshooting | 41 |

Airbags

| | |
|--|----|
| How Do the Front Airbags Work | 42 |
| How Do the Side Airbags Work | 42 |
| How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work | 43 |
| Airbag Precautions | 43 |
| Airbag Locations | 44 |
| Passenger Airbag Indicators | 44 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ SYNC 2.5 | 45 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ SYNC 2.5 | 45 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 46 |
| Airbags – Troubleshooting | 46 |

Table of Contents

eCall

| | |
|---|----|
| What Is eCall | 47 |
| How Does eCall Work | 47 |
| Emergency Call Requirements | 47 |
| Emergency Call Limitations | 47 |
| Manually Making an Emergency Call | 47 |
| Emergency Call Indicators | 48 |
| Changing the Backup Battery | 49 |
| eCall – Troubleshooting | 49 |

Keys and Remote Controls

| | |
|--|----|
| Remote Control Limitations | 50 |
| Opening and Closing the Flip Key - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition | 50 |
| Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: Push Button Start | 50 |
| Locating Your Vehicle | 51 |
| Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition | 51 |
| Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start | 52 |
| Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control | 54 |
| Programming the Remote Control | 54 |
| Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting | 54 |

MyKey™

| | |
|---|----|
| What Is MyKey | 55 |
| MyKey Settings | 55 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5/Keyed Ignition | 56 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5/Keyed Ignition | 56 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/Keyed Ignition | 56 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Push Button Start/SYNC 2.5 | 57 |

| | |
|--|----|
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Push Button Start/SYNC 2.5 | 57 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/Push Button Start | 58 |
| Programming a MyKey - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 58 |
| Programming a MyKey - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 58 |
| Programming a MyKey - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 58 |
| Clearing All MyKeys - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 59 |
| Clearing All MyKeys - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 59 |
| Clearing All MyKeys - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 59 |
| Checking MyKey System Status - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 59 |
| Checking MyKey System Status - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 59 |
| Checking MyKey System Status - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 60 |
| Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems | 60 |
| MyKey – Troubleshooting | 60 |

Doors and Locks

| | |
|--|----|
| Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle | 64 |
| Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle | 66 |
| Reprogramming the Unlocking Function - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 66 |
| Reprogramming the Unlocking Function - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 67 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|----|
| Reprogramming the Unlocking Function - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 67 |
| Door Lock Switch Inhibitor | 68 |
| Autounlock | 68 |
| Mislock | 69 |
| Autorelock | 70 |
| Door Lock Indicators | 70 |
| Doors and Locks Audible Warnings | 70 |
| Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting | 70 |

Keyless Entry

| | |
|--|----|
| What Is Keyless Entry | 71 |
| Keyless Entry Limitations | 71 |
| Keyless Entry Settings - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 71 |
| Keyless Entry Settings - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 71 |
| Keyless Entry Settings - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 72 |
| Using Keyless Entry | 72 |
| Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting | 73 |

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

| | |
|---|----|
| Liftgate Precautions | 74 |
| Opening the Liftgate | 74 |
| Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 76 |
| Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 76 |
| Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 76 |
| Setting the Liftgate Opening Height | 76 |
| Closing the Liftgate | 76 |
| Stopping the Liftgate Movement | 78 |
| Liftgate Obstacle Detection | 79 |
| Liftgate – Troubleshooting | 79 |

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

| | |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Liftgate Precautions | 81 |
| Opening the Liftgate | 81 |
| Closing the Liftgate | 81 |
| Liftgate – Troubleshooting | 82 |

Security

| | |
|--|----|
| Passive Anti-Theft System | 83 |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System | 83 |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings | 84 |
| Security – Troubleshooting | 86 |

Steering Wheel

| | |
|--|----|
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel | 88 |
| Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition | 88 |
| Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start | 89 |
| Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off | 89 |

Wipers and Washers

| | |
|---|----|
| Wipers | 90 |
| Autowipers | 91 |
| Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off | 92 |
| Reverse Wipe | 92 |
| Checking the Wiper Blades | 92 |
| Replacing the Front Wiper Blades | 92 |
| Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades | 93 |
| Washers | 93 |
| Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting | 95 |

Exterior Lighting

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Exterior Lighting Control | 96 |
| Headlamps | 96 |
| Headlamps – Troubleshooting | 97 |
| Autolamps | 98 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|--|-----|
| Exterior Lamps | 98 |
| Automatic High Beam Control | 101 |
| Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting | 103 |

Interior Lighting - Vehicles Without: Map Reading Lamps

| | |
|---|-----|
| Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off | 104 |
| Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off | 104 |
| Interior Lamp Function | 104 |
| Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness | 104 |

Interior Lighting - Vehicles With: Map Reading Lamps

| | |
|---|-----|
| Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off | 105 |
| Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off | 105 |
| Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off | 105 |
| Interior Lamp Function | 105 |
| Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness | 106 |

Windows

| | |
|--|-----|
| Opening and Closing the Windows | 107 |
| Global Opening and Closing | 107 |
| Window Bounce-Back | 109 |
| Locking the Rear Window Controls | 110 |

Interior Mirror

| | |
|---|-----|
| Interior Mirror Precautions | 111 |
| Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror | 111 |
| Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror | 111 |

Exterior Mirrors

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors | 112 |
|--------------------------------------|-----|

| | |
|--|-----|
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Power Fold Exterior Mirrors/SYNC 2.5 | 112 |
|--|-----|

| | |
|---|-----|
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Power Fold Exterior Mirrors/SYNC 2.5 | 112 |
|---|-----|

| | |
|--|-----|
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors | 113 |
|--|-----|

| | |
|---|-----|
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors/ SYNC 3 | 113 |
|---|-----|

Moonroof

| | |
|--|-----|
| Opening and Closing the Sunshade | 114 |
| Opening and Closing the Moonroof | 114 |
| Venting the Moonroof | 114 |
| Moonroof Bounce-Back | 114 |

Instrument Cluster

| | |
|--|-----|
| Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 115 |
| Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 116 |
| Tachometer | 116 |
| Speedometer | 116 |
| Fuel Gauge | 116 |
| Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge | 117 |
| What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps | 117 |
| Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps | 117 |
| What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators | 119 |
| Instrument Cluster Indicators | 119 |

Table of Contents

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

| | |
|---|-----|
| Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls | 122 |
| Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu | 122 |
| Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) | 123 |
| Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) | 123 |
| Personalized Settings | 123 |
| Fuel Economy Display | 124 |
| Trip Summary | 124 |

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

| | |
|---|-----|
| Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls | 125 |
| Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu | 125 |
| Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) | 126 |
| Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) | 126 |
| Personalized Settings | 126 |
| Fuel Economy Display | 127 |
| Trip Summary | 127 |

Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

| | |
|--|-----|
| Accessing the Trip Computer | 128 |
| Resetting the Trip Computer | 128 |
| Resetting the Individual Trip Values | 128 |
| Configuring the Trip Computer | 128 |

| | |
|-----------------|-----|
| Trip Data | 128 |
|-----------------|-----|

Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Accessing the Trip Computer | 129 |
| Resetting the Trip Computer | 129 |
| Trip Data | 129 |

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Remote Start | 130 |
| Remote Start Limitations | 130 |
| Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 130 |
| Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 130 |
| Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 130 |
| Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle | 130 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel | 131 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel | 131 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: SYNC 3, Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel | 132 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Heated Steering Wheel/SYNC 2.5 | 133 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Heated Steering Wheel/SYNC 2.5 | 133 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel/SYNC 3 | 134 |

Table of Contents

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

| | |
|---|-----|
| Switching Climate Control On and Off | 136 |
| Switching Recirculated Air On and Off | 136 |
| Switching Air Conditioning On and Off | 136 |
| Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off | 136 |
| Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off | 136 |
| Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off | 136 |
| Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off | 136 |
| Setting the Blower Motor Speed | 137 |
| Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off | 137 |
| Setting the Temperature | 137 |
| Directing the Flow of Air | 137 |
| Auto Mode | 137 |
| Climate Control Hints | 138 |

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

| | |
|---|-----|
| Switching Climate Control On and Off | 140 |
| Switching Recirculated Air On and Off | 140 |
| Switching Air Conditioning On and Off | 140 |
| Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off | 140 |
| Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off | 140 |
| Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off | 140 |
| Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off | 140 |
| Setting the Blower Motor Speed | 141 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off | 141 |
| Setting the Temperature | 141 |
| Directing the Flow of Air | 141 |
| Climate Control Hints | 142 |

Seats

| | |
|---|-----|
| Sitting in the Correct Position | 143 |
| Head Restraints | 143 |
| Manual Seats - Vehicles Without: Manual Lumbar | 144 |
| Manual Seats - Vehicles With: Manual Lumbar | 145 |
| Manual Seats - Vehicles With: Massage Seats | 146 |
| Rear Seats | 149 |
| Heated Seats | 150 |
| Removable Seat Covers | 150 |

Rear Occupant Alert System

| | |
|---|-----|
| What is the Rear Occupant Alert System | 155 |
| How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work | 155 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions | 155 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations | 155 |
| Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off | 155 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators | 156 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings | 156 |

USB Ports

| | |
|--|-----|
| Locating the USB Ports | 157 |
| Playing Media Using the USB Port | 157 |
| Charging a Device | 157 |

Table of Contents

Power Outlet

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| What Is the Power Outlet | 159 |
| Power Outlet Precautions | 159 |
| Locating the Power Outlets | 159 |

Cigar Lighter

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Cigar Lighter Precautions | 160 |
| Using the Cigar Lighter | 160 |

Wireless Accessory Charger

| | |
|---|-----|
| What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger | 161 |
| Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions | 161 |
| Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger | 161 |
| Charging a Wireless Device | 162 |

Storage

| | |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Cup Holders | 163 |
| Under Floor Storage | 163 |

Starting and Stopping the Engine

| | |
|--|-----|
| Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions | 165 |
| Ignition Switch | 165 |
| Push Button Ignition Switch | 166 |
| Starting the Engine | 166 |
| Engine Block Heater | 169 |
| Stopping the Engine | 170 |
| Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start | 172 |
| Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start | 173 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting | 173 |

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

| | |
|---|-----|
| What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle | 178 |
| How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work | 178 |
| Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics | 178 |
| Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators | 178 |

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Auto-Start-Stop | 179 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Precautions | 179 |
| Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off | 179 |
| Stopping the Engine | 179 |
| Restarting the Engine | 179 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Indicators | 180 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning | 180 |
| Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting | 180 |

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Auto-Start-Stop | 182 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Precautions | 182 |
| Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off | 182 |
| Stopping the Engine | 182 |
| Restarting the Engine | 182 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Indicators | 183 |
| Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting | 183 |

Table of Contents

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Auto-Start-Stop | 185 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Precautions | 185 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Settings | 185 |
| Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off | 185 |
| Stopping the Engine | 186 |
| Restarting the Engine | 186 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Indicators | 186 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning | 186 |
| Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting | 187 |

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Auto-Start-Stop | 189 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Precautions | 189 |
| Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off | 189 |
| Stopping the Engine | 189 |
| Restarting the Engine | 189 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Indicators | 190 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning | 190 |
| Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting | 190 |

Fuel and Refueling

| | |
|---|-----|
| Fuel and Refueling Precautions | 192 |
| Fuel Quality | 193 |
| Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel | 194 |
| Running Out of Fuel | 194 |
| Refueling | 195 |
| Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.0L EcoBoost™ | 197 |
| Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBlue | 198 |
| Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBoost™ | 199 |
| Fuel Consumption Regulations | 200 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™ | 200 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBlue | 201 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™ | 202 |
| Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings | 203 |
| Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting | 203 |

Diesel Particulate Filter

| | |
|---|-----|
| What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter | 204 |
| How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work | 204 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions | 204 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements | 205 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting | 205 |

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

| | |
|---|-----|
| What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System | 207 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions | 207 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements | 207 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines | 207 |
| Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank | 208 |
| Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 210 |
| Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 210 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption | 210 |

Table of Contents

| | | | |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| AdBlue® Capacity and Specification | 210 | Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters | 220 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting | 211 | Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters | 220 |
| Catalytic Converter | | Brake Shift Interlock | 221 |
| What Is the Catalytic Converter | 214 | Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings | 222 |
| Catalytic Converter Precautions | 214 | Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting | 223 |
| Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting | 214 | Brakes | |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter | | Brake Precautions | 224 |
| What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter | 215 | Anti-Lock Braking System | 224 |
| How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work | 215 | Brake Over Accelerator | 224 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions | 215 | Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir | 224 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements | 215 | Checking the Brake Fluid | 224 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting | 215 | Brake Fluid Specification | 225 |
| Manual Transmission | | Brakes – Troubleshooting | 225 |
| Manual Transmission Precautions | 217 | Parking Brake - Manual Transmission | |
| Shifting Into Reverse | 217 | Applying the Parking Brake | 227 |
| Manual Transmission Shift Indicators | 217 | Releasing the Parking Brake | 227 |
| Checking the Clutch Fluid Level | 217 | Parking Brake Audible Warning | 227 |
| Clutch Fluid Specification | 217 | Parking Brake – Troubleshooting | 227 |
| Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting | 218 | Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission | |
| Automatic Transmission | | Applying the Parking Brake | 228 |
| Automatic Transmission Precautions | 219 | Releasing the Parking Brake | 228 |
| Automatic Transmission Positions | 219 | Parking Brake Audible Warning | 228 |
| Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles Without: Paddle Shifters | 220 | Parking Brake – Troubleshooting | 228 |
| Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters | 220 | Cross Traffic Braking | |
| | | What Is Cross Traffic Braking | 229 |
| | | How Does Cross Traffic Braking Work | 229 |
| | | Cross Traffic Braking Precautions | 229 |
| | | Switching Cross Traffic Braking On and Off | 230 |
| | | Overriding Cross Traffic Braking | 230 |

Table of Contents

| | | | |
|---|-----|--|-----|
| Cross Traffic Braking Indicators | 230 | Switching Parking Aid On and Off | 238 |
| Cross Traffic Braking – Troubleshooting | 230 | Rear Parking Aid | 239 |
| Hill Start Assist | | Front Parking Aid | 239 |
| What Is Hill Start Assist | 232 | Side Parking Aid | 240 |
| How Does Hill Start Assist Work | 232 | Parking Aid Indicators | 242 |
| Hill Start Assist Precautions | 232 | Parking Aids – Troubleshooting | 242 |
| Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 232 | Rear View Camera | |
| Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 233 | What Is the Rear View Camera | 244 |
| Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 233 | Rear View Camera Precautions | 244 |
| Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting | 233 | Rear View Camera Limitations | 244 |
| Traction Control | | Locating the Rear View Camera | 244 |
| What Is Traction Control | 234 | Rear View Camera Guide Lines | 244 |
| How Does Traction Control Work | 234 | Rear View Camera Settings | 245 |
| Switching Traction Control On and Off - Excluding: ST | 234 | 180 Degree Camera | |
| Traction Control Indicator | 234 | What Is the 180 Degree Camera | 247 |
| Traction Control – Troubleshooting - Excluding: ST | 234 | How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work | 247 |
| Stability Control | | 180 Degree Camera Precautions | 247 |
| What Is Stability Control | 236 | Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off | 247 |
| How Does Stability Control Work | 236 | Active Park Assist | |
| Switching Stability Control On and Off - Excluding: ST | 236 | What Is Active Park Assist | 248 |
| Switching Stability Control On and Off - ST | 236 | Active Park Assist Precautions | 248 |
| Stability Control Indicator - ST | 237 | Switching Active Park Assist On and Off | 248 |
| Stability Control – Troubleshooting - ST | 237 | Entering a Parallel Parking Space | 248 |
| Parking Aids | | Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space | 249 |
| Parking Aid Precautions | 238 | Exiting a Parking Space | 249 |
| | | Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting | 250 |
| | | Cruise Control | |
| | | What Is Cruise Control | 251 |
| | | Switching Cruise Control On and Off | 251 |
| | | Setting the Cruise Control Speed | 251 |
| | | Canceling the Set Speed | 252 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| Resuming the Set Speed | 252 |
| Cruise Control Indicators | 252 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control | |
| How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control | 253 |
| How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering | 253 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions | 253 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations | 254 |
| Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off | 256 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control | 256 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering | 256 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control | 257 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering | 257 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control | 258 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering | 259 |
| Canceling the Set Speed | 260 |
| Resuming the Set Speed | 260 |
| Overriding the Set Speed | 260 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators | 261 |
| Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 261 |
| Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 262 |
| Lane Centering | 262 |
| Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control | 264 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting | 266 |
| Drive Mode Control | |
| What Is Drive Mode Control | 269 |
| Selecting a Drive Mode - Excluding: ST | 269 |
| Selecting a Drive Mode - ST | 269 |
| Drive Modes | 269 |
| Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting | 270 |
| Eco Coach | |
| What Is Eco Coach | 271 |
| How Does Eco Coach Work | 271 |
| How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work | 271 |
| Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 271 |
| Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 271 |
| How Does Trip Summary Work - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 271 |
| How Does Trip Summary Work - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 272 |
| Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 272 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 272 |
|---|-----|

Efficient Drive Mode

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Efficient Drive Mode | 273 |
| Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 273 |
| Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 273 |
| Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode Trip Summary | 273 |
| Efficient Drive Mode Indicators | 274 |

Local Hazard Information

| | |
|---|-----|
| What Is Local Hazard Information | 275 |
| Local Hazard Information Precautions | 275 |
| Enabling Local Hazard Information | 275 |
| Checking Local Hazard Information Status - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 275 |
| Checking Local Hazard Information Status - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 275 |

Speed Limiter

| | |
|---|-----|
| How Does the Speed Limiter Work | 276 |
| Speed Limiter Precautions | 276 |
| Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering | 276 |
| Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering | 276 |
| Setting the Speed Limit | 276 |
| Changing the Set Speed Limit | 276 |
| Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering | 276 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering | 277 |
| Resuming the Set Speed Limit | 277 |
| Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit | 277 |
| Speed Limiter Indicators | 277 |
| Speed Limiter Audible Warnings | 277 |

Intelligent Speed Limiter

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter | 278 |
| How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work | 278 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions | 278 |
| Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering | 278 |
| Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering | 278 |
| Setting the Speed Limit | 279 |
| Changing the Set Speed Limit | 279 |
| Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 279 |
| Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 279 |
| Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 279 |
| Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering | 280 |
| Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering | 280 |
| Resuming the Set Speed Limit | 280 |
| Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit | 280 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators | 280 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings | 280 |
| Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 280 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 281 |
| Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 281 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting | 281 |

Lane Keeping System

| | |
|---|-----|
| What Is the Lane Keeping System | 282 |
| How Does the Lane Keeping System Work | 282 |
| Lane Keeping System Precautions | 282 |
| Lane Keeping System Limitations | 283 |
| Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off | 283 |
| Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 283 |
| Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 284 |
| Lane Keeping System Settings | 284 |
| Alert Mode | 284 |
| Aid Mode | 285 |
| Alert and Aid Mode | 285 |
| Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 286 |
| Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 286 |
| Blind Spot Assist | 286 |
| Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage | 289 |
| Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting | 291 |

Blind Spot Information System

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Blind Spot Information System | 292 |
| How Does Blind Spot Information System Work | 292 |
| Blind Spot Information System Precautions | 292 |
| Blind Spot Information System Limitations | 292 |
| Blind Spot Information System Requirements | 293 |
| Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 293 |
| Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 293 |
| Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 293 |
| Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors | 294 |
| Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage | 294 |
| Blind Spot Information System Indicators | 298 |
| Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting | 298 |

Cross Traffic Alert

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Cross Traffic Alert | 299 |
| How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work | 299 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Precautions | 299 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Limitations | 299 |
| Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 300 |
| Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 300 |
| Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 300 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors | 301 |
| Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage | 301 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Indicators | 301 |
| Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting | 302 |

Pre-Collision Assist

| | |
|---|-----|
| What Is Pre-Collision Assist | 303 |
| How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work | 303 |
| How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work | 304 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Precautions | 304 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Limitations | 304 |
| Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control | 305 |
| Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control | 305 |
| Distance Indication | 306 |
| Forward Collision Warning | 307 |
| Distance Alert | 307 |
| Automatic Emergency Braking | 308 |
| Evasive Steering Assist | 309 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting | 310 |

Driver Alert

| | |
|---|-----|
| What Is Driver Alert | 312 |
| How Does Driver Alert Work | 312 |
| Driver Alert Precautions | 312 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 312 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 313 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 313 |
| Driver Alert – Troubleshooting | 313 |

Speed Sign Recognition

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Speed Sign Recognition | 314 |
| How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work | 314 |
| Speed Sign Recognition Precautions | 314 |
| Speed Sign Recognition Limitations | 314 |
| Speed Sign Recognition Indicators | 314 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 315 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 315 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 315 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 315 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 316 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 316 |
| Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting | 316 |

Traffic Sign Recognition

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Traffic Sign Recognition | 317 |
| How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work | 317 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions | 317 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations | 317 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators | 317 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|--|-----|
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 318 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 318 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 318 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 318 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 319 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 319 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting | 319 |

Wrong Way Alert

| | |
|--|-----|
| What Is Wrong Way Alert | 320 |
| How Does Wrong Way Alert Work | 320 |
| Wrong Way Alert Precautions | 320 |
| Wrong Way Alert Limitations | 320 |
| Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 320 |
| Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5 | 321 |
| Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 | 321 |
| Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting | 321 |

Load Carrying

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Load Carrying Precautions | 322 |
| Roof Rack | 322 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Carrier | 323 |

Luggage Compartment

| | |
|---|-----|
| Luggage Compartment Precautions | 324 |
| Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover | 324 |
| Luggage Compartment Anchor Points | 325 |

Connecting a Trailer

| | |
|----------------|-----|
| Tow Ball | 327 |
|----------------|-----|

Towing a Trailer

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Towing a Trailer Precautions | 331 |
| Towing a Trailer Limitations | 331 |
| Loading Your Trailer | 331 |
| Trailer Towing Hints | 332 |
| Towing Weights and Dimensions | 332 |

Driving Hints

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Cold Weather Precautions | 335 |
| Breaking-In | 335 |
| Driving Economically | 335 |
| Driving Through Shallow Water | 335 |
| Floor Mats | 336 |

Crash and Breakdown Information

| | |
|--|-----|
| Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off | 338 |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle | 338 |
| Post-Crash Alert System | 339 |
| Post Impact Braking | 340 |
| Automatic Crash Shutoff | 340 |
| Recovery Towing | 341 |
| Fail-Safe Cooling | 342 |

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Towing Your Vehicle Precautions | 344 |
| Emergency Towing | 344 |

Table of Contents

Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions345

Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit - Vehicles With:
Temporary Mobility Kit, Vehicles
Without: High Output Amplifier and
Subwoofer346

Storing a First Aid Kit - Vehicles With:
Temporary Mobility Kit/High Output
Amplifier and Subwoofer346

Storing a First Aid Kit - Vehicles With:
Mini Spare Wheel346

Storing a Warning Triangle - Vehicles
With: Temporary Mobility Kit, Vehicles
Without: High Output Amplifier and
Subwoofer346

Storing a Warning Triangle - Vehicles
With: Temporary Mobility Kit/High
Output Amplifier and Subwoofer347

Storing a Warning Triangle - Vehicles
With: Mini Spare Wheel347

Fuses

Fuse Precautions348

Under Hood Fuse Box348

Body Control Module Fuse Box354

Identifying Fuse Types356

Fuses – Troubleshooting356

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions357

Opening and Closing the Hood357

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™,
LHD358

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™,
RHD359

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue,
LHD360

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue,
RHD361

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™,
LHD362

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™,
RHD363

Engine Oil364

Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline366

Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel366

Coolant366

12V Battery370

12V Battery – Troubleshooting372

Exterior Bulbs374

Interior Bulbs379

Changing the Illuminated Scuff Plate
Battery380

Track Use - ST

Track Use Precautions - 1.0L EcoBoost™,
7-Speed Automatic Transmission
.....381

Track Use Precautions - 1.5L EcoBoost™
.....381

Launch Control - ST, Manual Transmission

What Is Launch Control382

Launch Control Precautions382

Launch Control Limitations382

Switching Launch Control On and Off
.....382

Using Launch Control382

Launch Control Indicators382

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior383

Cleaning the Interior384

Repairing Minor Paint Damage387

Waxing Your Vehicle387

Wheel and Tire Information

Using Summer Tires388

Using Winter Tires388

Table of Contents

| | | | |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| Using Snow Chains | 388 | Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 401 |
| Tire Care | | Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting | 402 |
| Checking the Tire Pressures | 389 | Changing a Road Wheel | |
| Inflating the Tires | 389 | Changing a Flat Tire | 404 |
| Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: ST | 389 | Wheel Nuts | 409 |
| Tire Pressure Specifications - ST | 391 | Capacities and Specifications | |
| Inspecting the Tire for Damage | 393 | Vehicle Dimensions | 410 |
| Tire Rotation | 393 | Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ | 411 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit | | Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue | 411 |
| What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit | 395 | Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™ | 412 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions | 395 | Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ | 412 |
| Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit | 395 | Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue | 413 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components | 395 | Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™ | 414 |
| Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit | 396 | Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.0L EcoBoost™ | 414 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System | | Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBlue | 415 |
| What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System | 400 | Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBoost™ | 416 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions | 400 | Washer Fluid Specification | 417 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations | 400 | AdBlue® Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue | 417 |
| Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 400 | Brake Fluid Specification | 418 |
| Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 401 | Vehicle Identification | |
| Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen | 401 | Vehicle Identification Number | 419 |
| | | Vehicle Identification Plate | 419 |
| | | Connected Vehicle | |
| | | What Is a Connected Vehicle | 421 |
| | | Connected Vehicle Requirements | 421 |

Table of Contents

| | | | |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| Connected Vehicle Limitations | 421 | REACH | 460 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network | 421 | Radio Frequency Certification Labels | 460 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network | 421 | Replacement Parts Recommendation | 502 |
| Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting | 422 | Mobile Communications Equipment | 502 |
| | | eCall User Information | 503 |
| | | End User License Agreement | 507 |

Audio System

| | |
|---|-----|
| Audio System Precautions | 424 |
| Switching the Audio Unit On and Off | 424 |
| Selecting the Audio Source | 424 |
| Playing or Pausing the Audio Source | 424 |
| Adjusting the Volume | 424 |
| Setting a Memory Preset | 424 |
| Muting the Audio | 424 |
| Scrolling Through Menu Items | 425 |
| Selecting a Menu Item | 425 |
| Adjusting the Sound Settings | 425 |
| Setting the Clock and Date | 425 |
| AM/FM Radio | 425 |
| Switching the Display On and Off | 426 |
| Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio | 426 |

Appendices

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Electromagnetic Compatibility | 533 |
|-------------------------------------|-----|

SYNC™ 3

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| General Information | 428 |
| Using Voice Recognition | 430 |
| Entertainment | 436 |
| Climate | 438 |
| Phone | 441 |
| Navigation | 443 |
| Apps | 447 |
| Settings | 448 |
| SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting | 450 |

Customer Information

| | |
|---|-----|
| Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment | 460 |
| Declaration of Conformity | 460 |

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

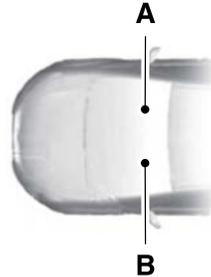
Note: This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Illustrations

Note: Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This publication could qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Data Privacy

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 448).

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings.*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 447).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Data Privacy

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 448).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - VEHICLES WITH: ECALL

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle fuel type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

Environment

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

France Only



Points de collecte sur www.quefairedemesdechets.fr et www.ford.fr

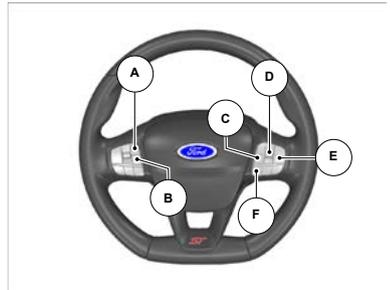
Visual Search

STEERING WHEEL - EXCLUDING: ST



- A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 251).
- B See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 278). See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 278).
- C See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 430).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 122). See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 125).

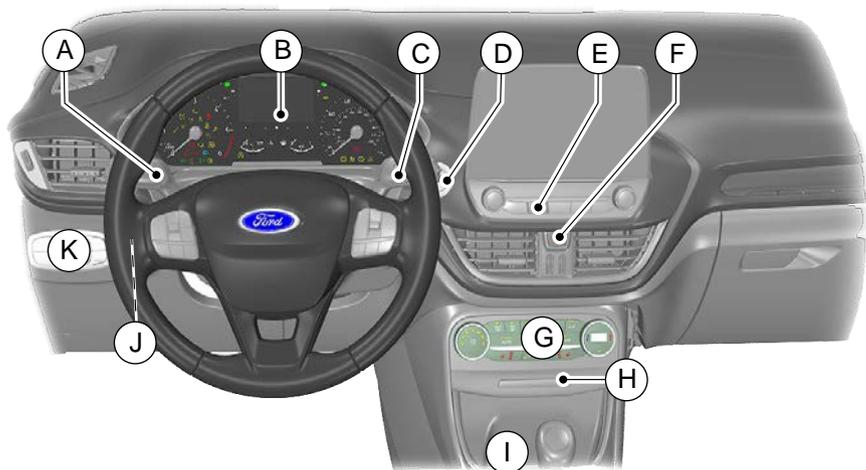
STEERING WHEEL - ST



- A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 251).
- B See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 278). See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 278).
- C See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 269). See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 269).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 122). See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 125).
- E See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 269). See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 269).
- F See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 430).

Visual Search

INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD

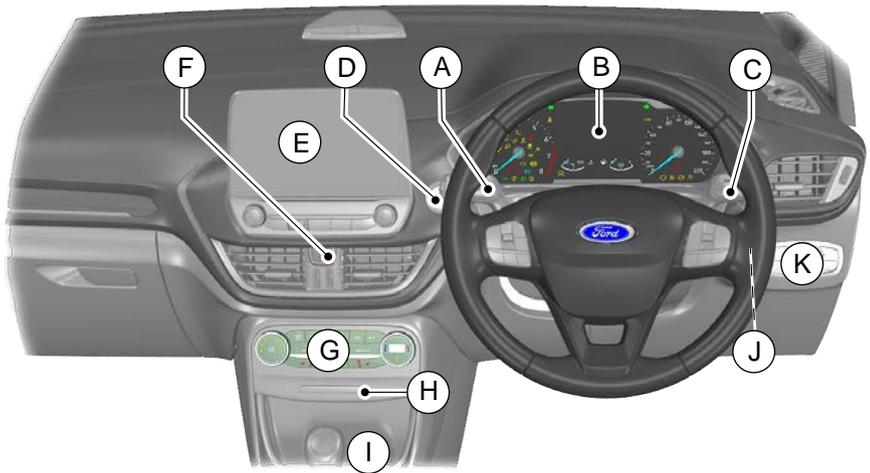


- A Lane keeping system button. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 283).
- B Information display. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 122). Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 115).
- C Wiper lever. See **Wipers** (page 90).
- D Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 166).
- E Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 424). See **SYNC™ 3** (page 428).
- F Hazard flasher switch. See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 338).
- G Climate controls.
- H Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 45).
- I Wireless accessory charger. See **Wireless Accessory Charger** (page 161).

Visual Search

- J Power liftgate switch. See **Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle** (page 74).
- K Lighting control. See **Exterior Lighting** (page 96).

INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD

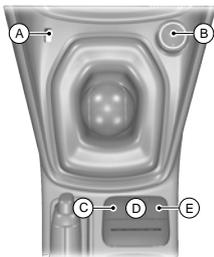


- A Lane keeping system button. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 283).
- B Information display. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 122). Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 115).
- C Wiper lever. See **Wipers** (page 90).
- D Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 166).
- E Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 424). See **SYNC™ 3** (page 428).
- F Hazard flasher switch. See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 338).
- G Climate controls.

Visual Search

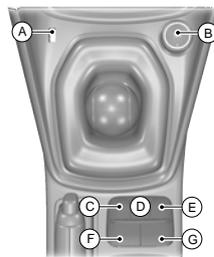
- H Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 45).
- I Wireless accessory charger. See **Wireless Accessory Charger** (page 161).
- J Power liftgate switch. See **Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle** (page 74).
- K Lighting control. See **Exterior Lighting** (page 96).

CENTER CONSOLE - LHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: ST



- A USB port. See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 157).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 159).
- C Drive mode button. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 269).
- D Traction control switch.
- E Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 179).

CENTER CONSOLE - LHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/ REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: ST

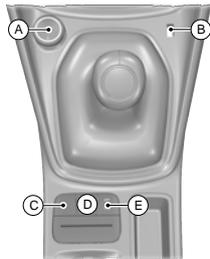


- A USB port. See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 157).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 159).
- C Drive mode button. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 269).
- D Traction control switch.
- E Active park assist button. See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 248).

Visual Search

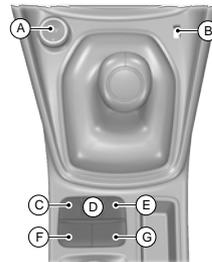
- F Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 179).
- G Parking aid button. See **What is the Rear Parking Aid** (page 239). See **What is the Front Parking Aid** (page 239).

CENTER CONSOLE - RHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: ST



- A Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 159).
- B USB port. See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 157).
- C Drive mode button. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 269).
- D Traction control switch.
- E Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 179).

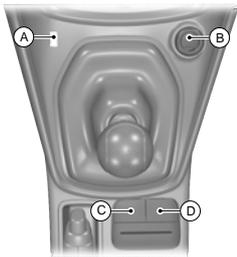
CENTER CONSOLE - RHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: ST



- A Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 159).
- B USB port. See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 157).
- C Drive mode button. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 269).
- D Traction control switch.
- E Active park assist button. See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 248).
- F Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 179).
- G Parking aid button. See **What is the Rear Parking Aid** (page 239). See **What is the Front Parking Aid** (page 239).

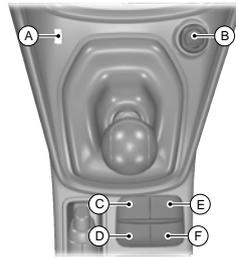
Visual Search

CENTER CONSOLE - ST, LHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID



- A USB port. See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 157).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 159).
- C Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 179).
- D Stability control button. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 236).

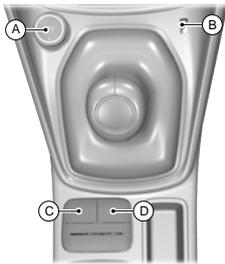
CENTER CONSOLE - ST, LHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/ REAR PARKING AID



- A USB port. See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 157).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 159).
- C Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 179).
- D Parking aid button. See **What is the Rear Parking Aid** (page 239). See **What is the Front Parking Aid** (page 239).
- E Stability control button. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 236).
- F Active park assist button. See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 248).

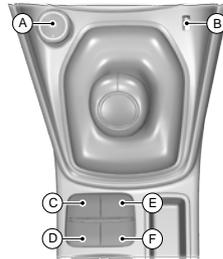
Visual Search

CENTER CONSOLE - ST, RHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID



- A Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 159).
- B USB port. See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 157).
- C Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 179).
- D Stability control button. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 236).

CENTER CONSOLE - ST, RHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/ REAR PARKING AID



- A Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 159).
- B USB port. See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 157).
- C Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 179).
- D Parking aid button. See **What is the Rear Parking Aid** (page 239). See **What is the Front Parking Aid** (page 239).
- E Stability control button. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 236).
- F Active park assist button. See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 248).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety



WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

| Seating Positions | Mass Group Categories | | | | |
|---|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| | 0 | 0+ | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| | 0–10 kg (0–22 lb) | 0–13 kg (0–29 lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40 lb) | 15–25 kg (33–55 lb) | 22–36 kg (49–79 lb) |
| Front passenger seat with airbag ON . | X | X | UF ¹ | UF ¹ | UF ¹ |
| Front passenger seat with airbag OFF . | U ¹ | U ¹ | U ¹ | U ¹ | U ¹ |
| Rear seats. ² | U | U | U | U | U |

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

| Seating Positions | | Mass Group Categories | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| | | 0 | 0 | 0+ | 1 | 1 |
| | | Lateral Facing | Rearward Facing | Rearward Facing | Forward Facing | Rearward Facing |
| | | 0–10 kg (0–22 lb) | 0–10 kg (0–22 lb) | 0–13 kg (0–29 lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40 lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40 lb) |
| Front passenger seat. | Size class. | No ISOFIX | | | | |
| | Size type. | | | | | |
| Rear outermost seat ISOFIX. | Size class. | F, G ¹ | E ¹ | C, D, E ¹ | A, B, B ¹ | C, D ¹ |

Child Safety

| Seating Positions | | Mass Group Categories | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | 0 | 0 | 0+ | 1 | 1 |
| | | Lateral Facing | Rearward Facing | Rearward Facing | Forward Facing | Rearward Facing |
| | | 0–10 kg (0–22lb) | 0–10 kg (0–22lb) | 0–13 kg (0–29lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40lb) |
| | Fixture. | L1, L2 ¹ | R1 ¹ | R1, R2X, R2, R3 ¹ | F2, F2X, F3 ¹ | R2X, R2, R3 ¹ |
| | Size type. | IL | IL | IL | IL, IUF | IL |
| Rear center seat. | Size class. | No ISOFIX | | | | |
| | Size type. | | | | | |

¹The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

i-Size Child Restraints

| | Front Passenger Seat | Rear Outermost Seats | Rear Center Seat |
|---|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON . | X | - | - |
| i-Size child restraint systems. | X | i-U | X |
| Suitable booster fixture. | B2, B3 ¹ | B2, B3 ¹ | B2, B3 ¹ |

¹The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

| Size Class Categories | Manufacturer | Model | Attachment |
|--|---------------------|--|--|
| 40–83 cm (15–35 in) 0–13 kg (0–29 lb) | Maxi-Cosi. | Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹ | ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only. |
| 40–105 cm (15–40 in) 0–17.5 kg (0–39 lb) | Maxi-Cosi. | Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹ | ISOFIX and support leg (base). |
| 100–150 cm (40–60 in) 15–36 kg (33–79 lb) | Britax Römer. | KidFix M i-Size. ^{1,2} | ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only. |

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion



WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Child Safety



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

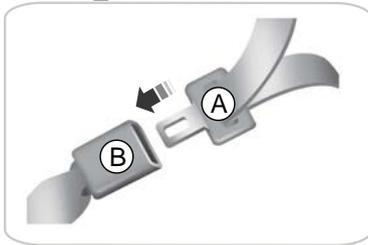


WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.

3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

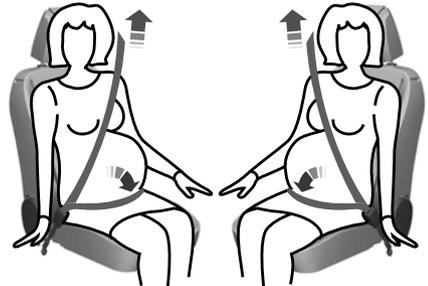
Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelts

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E183582

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

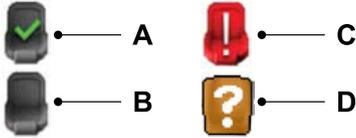
The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

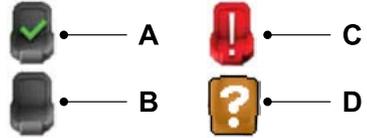
Seatbelts

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Information**.
4. Select **Seatbelts**.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Seatbelts**.

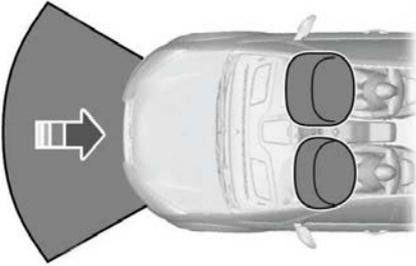
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|--|---|
| Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Airbags

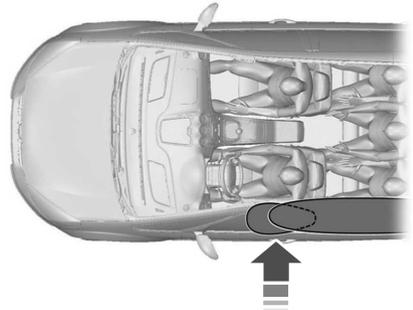


The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Airbags

WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

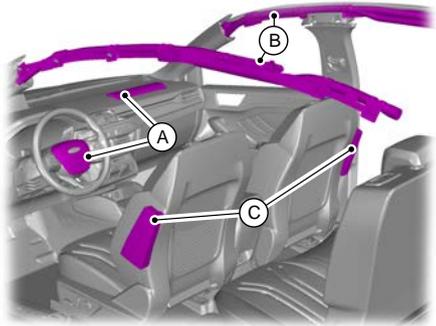
WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

AIRBAG LOCATIONS



- A Front Airbags.
- B Side Curtain Airbags.
- C Side Airbags.

Note: The location of airbags are indicated by the word Airbag.

PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS



Airbags

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

Switching the Passenger Airbag Off



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **Off**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

Switching the Passenger Airbag On



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **On**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

Switching the Passenger Airbag Off



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Passenger airbag**.
5. Select **Passenger airbag off**.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

Switching the Passenger Airbag On



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Passenger airbag**.
5. Select **Passenger airbag on**.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

Airbags

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Passenger airbag**.
4. Switch **Passenger airbag** on or off.

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758.

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 23).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.
3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: *Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.*

4. Speak to the operator.

Note: After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS



WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

| Emergency Call Indicator Status | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Indicator off. | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Dimmed red. | Normal operation. |
| Rapidly flashing. | The system is initiating an emergency call. |
| Moderately flashing. | The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services. |
| Slowly flashing. | The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established. |
| Bright red. | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

eCall

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Emergency Call System malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

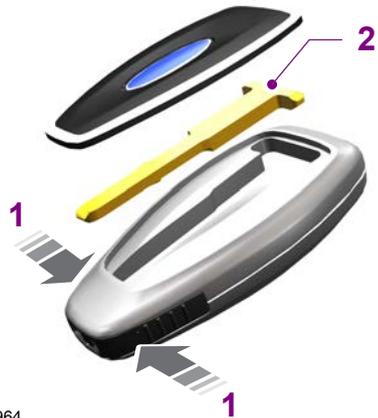
OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



Press the button to release the key. Press and hold the button to fold the key back when not in use.

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The passive key contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

Keys and Remote Controls

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



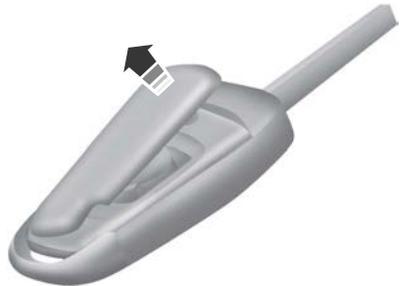
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

1. Press the key release button.



2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
3. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



4. Carefully remove the cover.

Keys and Remote Controls



5. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.



6. Remove the battery.
7. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
8. Replace the battery cover.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

 **WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

 **WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



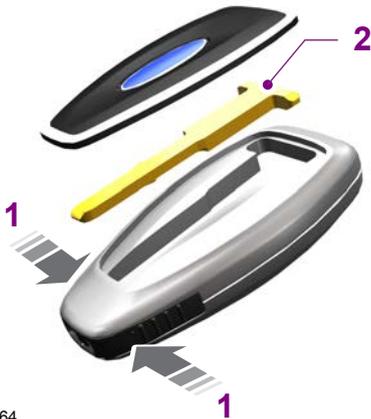
CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Keys and Remote Controls



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



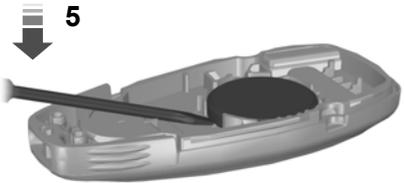
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.
Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.
6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.
Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

Keys and Remote Controls

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the

original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|------------------------------|--|
| Key battery low Replace soon | Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing. |

WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted settings to promote good driving habits.

MYKEY SETTINGS

NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS - EXCLUDING: ST

Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS - ST

Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

Selectable Drive Modes

You cannot select some drive modes when using a MyKey.

Traction Control and Stability Control

You cannot switch traction control or stability control off when using a MyKey.

CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 56).

Speed Limit



WARNING: Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Traction and Stability Control

If you set traction control or stability control to be always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5/ KEYED IGNITION

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
3. Select **MyKey**.
4. Select **Create MyKey**.

5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
6. Switch the ignition off.

Note: *We recommend that you label this key.*

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5/ KEYED IGNITION

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **MyKey**.
5. Select **Create MyKey**.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
7. Switch the ignition off.

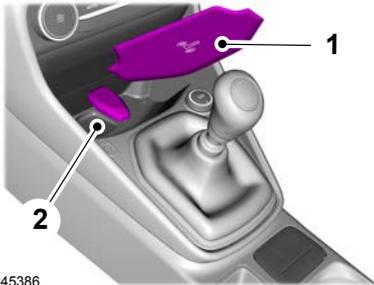
Note: *We recommend that you label this key.*

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3/ KEYED IGNITION

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **Create MyKey**.
6. Switch the ignition off.

Note: We recommend that you label this key.

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/PUSH BUTTON START/SYNC 2.5

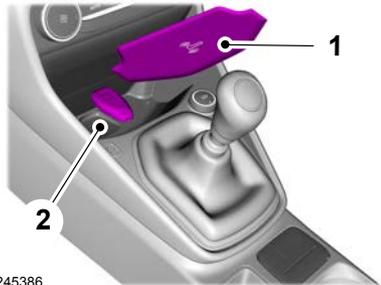


E245386

1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the admin key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.
3. Switch the ignition on.
4. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
5. Select **MyKey**.
6. Select **Create MyKey**.
7. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
8. Switch the ignition off.

Note: We recommend that you label this key.

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/PUSH BUTTON START/SYNC 2.5

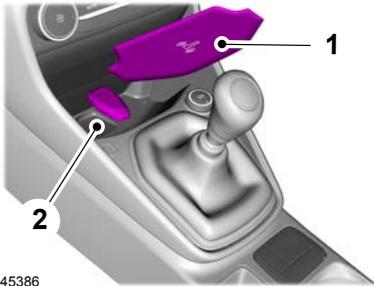


E245386

1. Remove the rubber mat, and if your vehicle has a wireless charger, remove that too.
2. Place the admin key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.
3. Switch the ignition on.
4. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
5. Select **Settings**.
6. Select **MyKey**.
7. Select **Create MyKey**.
8. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
9. Switch the ignition off.

Note: We recommend that you label this key.

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3/ PUSH BUTTON START



E245386

1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the admin key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.
3. Switch the ignition on.
4. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
5. Press **Vehicle**.
6. Press **MyKey**.
7. Press **Create MyKey**.
8. Switch the ignition off.

Note: We recommend that you label this key.

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
3. Select **MyKey**.

4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.
5. Configure the setting.
6. Switch the ignition off.

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **MyKey**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.
6. Configure the setting.
7. Switch the ignition off.

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.
6. Configure the setting.
7. Switch the ignition off.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
3. Select **MyKey**.
4. Select **Clear MyKeys**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **MyKey**.
5. Select **Clear MyKeys**.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **Clear all MyKeys**.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey and also the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
3. Select **MyKey**.
4. Select **MyKey info**.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey and also the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the ignition on.

2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **MyKey**.
5. Select **MyKey info**.
1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **MyKey Information**.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey and also the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

The system is not compatible with non-Ford remote start systems.

MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

| Message | Description |
|--|---|
| Key is already a MyKey | Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey. |
| Key restricted at next start. Label this key | Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off. |

MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

| Message | Description |
|--|--|
| Place key in backup location | Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See Creating a MyKey (page 57). See Creating a MyKey (page 58). |
| Key is already a MyKey | Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey. |
| Key restricted at next start. Label this key | Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off. |

MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 56).

Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.

Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 56).

Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 56).

Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 56).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 57).

Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 57).
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
- The last MyKey was created without switching the ignition off.

Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 57).

Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 57).

Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 57).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?

- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors.

Locking the Doors



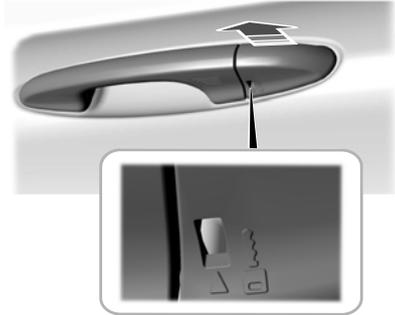
Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 71).

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Removing the Lock Cylinder Cap

1. Release the key blade from the remote control. See **Removing the Key Blade** (page 50).



E243949

2. Fully insert the key blade into the key slot.
3. Gently pull the lock cylinder cap toward you to release it.
4. Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder.

Locking the Doors

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

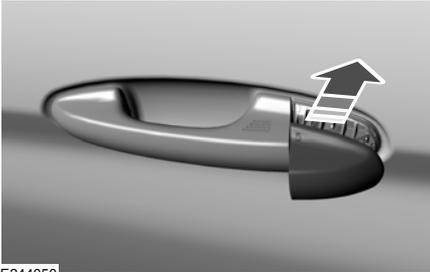
Unlocking the Driver Door

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.

Doors and Locks

Reinstalling the Lock Cylinder Cap



1. Place the cap over the lock cylinder.
2. Push the cap forward until it clicks into place. Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

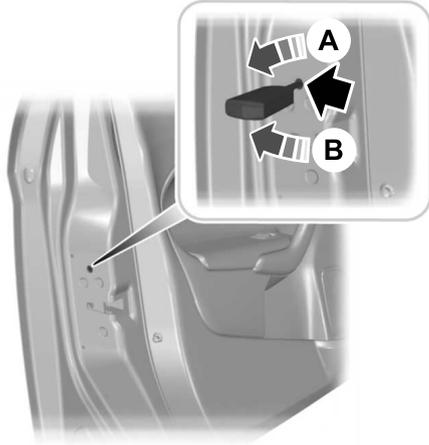
Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.

1. Remove the lock cylinder cap. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 64).
2. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.
3. Reinstall the lock cylinder cap.

Doors and Locks

INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, individually lock the doors using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then individually unlock all other doors by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be individually locked until the central locking function has been repaired.*

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: *The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.*

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Doors and Locks

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.
- If you unlock any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Select **Unlocking**.
5. Select **All doors** or **Driver's door**.

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.
- If you unlock any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Locks**.
5. Select **Unlocking**.
6. Select **All doors** or **Driver's door**.

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks.

Doors and Locks

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.
- If you unlock any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Press **Unlocking**.
5. Press a setting.

DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR

HOW DOES THE DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR WORK

The door lock switch inhibitor is a theft protection feature that prevents someone unlocking the vehicle from inside using the power door lock control switch.

When you lock your vehicle with the remote control, the power door lock control switch does no longer operate after 20 seconds.

Note: *You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore the power door lock control switch function.*

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

Note: *Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.*

Doors and Locks

SWITCHING AUTO UNLOCK ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto unlock** on or off.

SWITCHING AUTO UNLOCK ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Locks**.
5. Switch **Auto unlock** on or off.

SWITCHING AUTO UNLOCK ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

HOW DOES MISLOCK WORK

The horn sounds when you press the lock button on the remote control and a door is open.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ANTI-THEFT ALARM

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if any door or the liftgate is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ANTI-THEFT ALARM

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock chirp** on or off.

Doors and Locks

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Locks**.
5. Switch **Mislock chirp** on or off.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|----------------------|---|
| Driver door open | Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door. |
| Passenger door open | |
| Rear left door open | |
| Rear right door open | |
| Bonnet open | Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood. |

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Select **Unlocking**.
5. Select **All doors** or **Driver's door**.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

Keyless Entry

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can change between the unlocking modes in the instrument cluster display.

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Select **Unlocking**.
5. Select **All doors** or **Driver's door**.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can change between the unlocking modes on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Press **Unlocking**.
5. Select a setting.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Keyless Entry

Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 71). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Press the button next to the lighting control.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

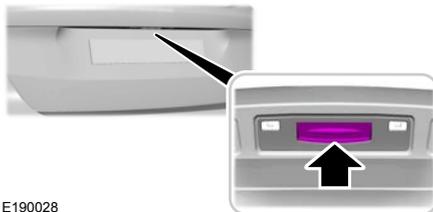
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

Note: If an authorized device is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate control button.



E190028

2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

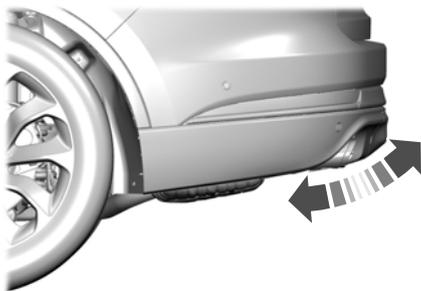
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the authorized device away from the rear bumper detection area.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Power liftgate**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Power liftgate**.
4. Select a setting.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Power liftgate**.

5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: *Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.*

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

Note: *You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.*

Note: *You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.*

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

Note: *You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.*

Note: *The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.*

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate



Press the button next to the lighting control. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Press and release the liftgate button. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

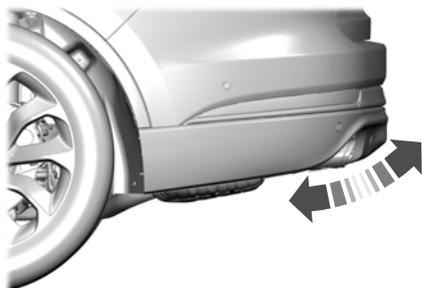
Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate closes.

Note: A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Note: Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

Note: Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

Note: Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: *To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.*

Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---------------|--|
| Liftgate open | The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate. |

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

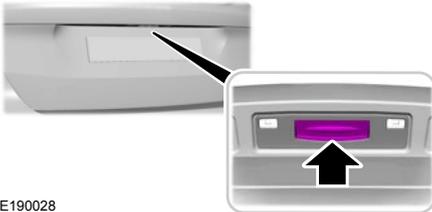
LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

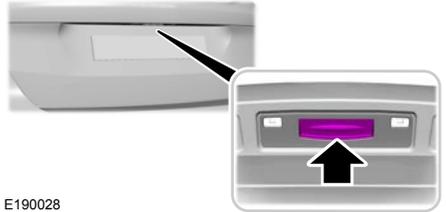
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate.



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

A recessed grip or handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---------------|--|
| Liftgate open | The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate. |

Security

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Security

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, full guard and reduced guard.

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *The alarm security level will switch back to full guard once the power is turned on.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Alarm system**.
4. Select **Alarm settings**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Press **Motion Sensors**.
5. Press a setting.

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Alarm system**.

Security

5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

| Menu Item | Action |
|---------------|---|
| Full guard | Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button. |
| Reduced guard | |

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Alarm system**.
4. Select **Ask on exit**.
5. Switch **Ask on exit** on or off.

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Switch **Ask on Exit** on or off.

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Alarm system**.
5. Select **Ask on exit**.
6. Switch **Ask on exit** on or off.

Security

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|--|
| No key detected | The system has not detected a correctly coded key. |
| Starting system malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm | Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. |
| Alarm announcement | |

Security

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 143).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

Steering Wheel

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: *The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls. The button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Note: *The engine must be running to use the heated steering wheel.*

Note: *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

Note: *Depending on the remote start settings, the heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the engine was switched off.*

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

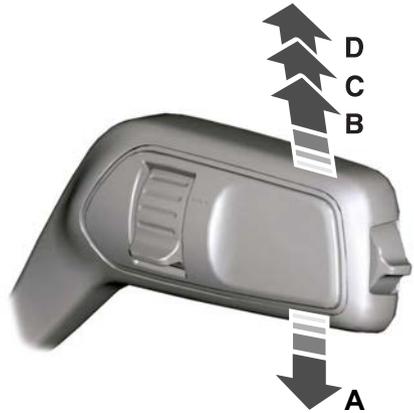
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 92). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 92). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 93).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF

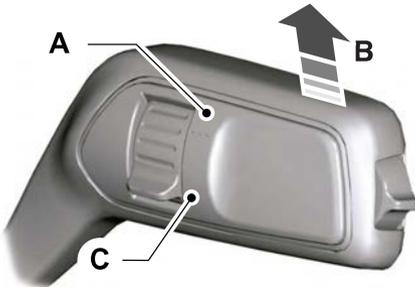


E248785

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent Wipe.
- C Normal Wipe.
- D High-speed Wipe

Wipers and Washers

Intermittent wipe



E242320

- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain sensing** on or off.

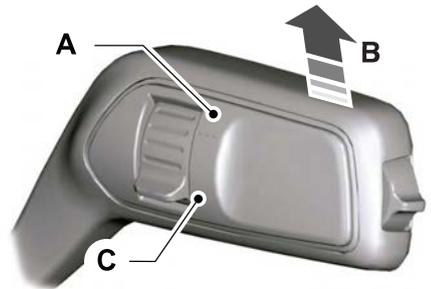
AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain sensing** on or off.

AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



E242320

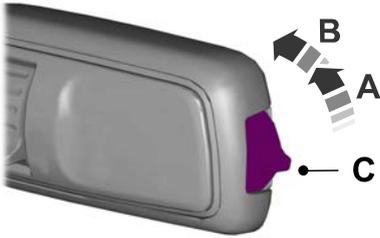
- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers.

Wipers and Washers

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle settings**.

4. Select **Wipers**.
5. Switch **Reverse wiper** on or off.

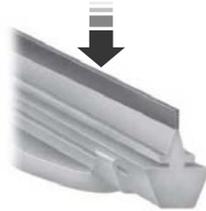
REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Reverse wiper** on or off.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure.

Wipers and Washers

1. Fully lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Press the wiper blade locking button.



3. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

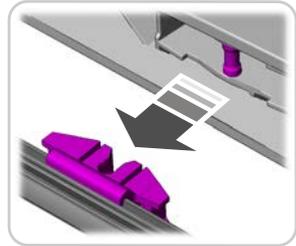
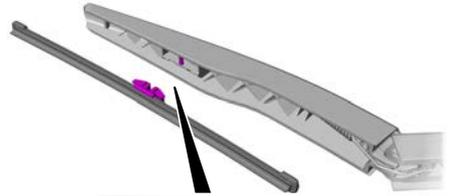
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



E183236

2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Wipers and Washers

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



E242323

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on.

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle settings**.
4. Select **Wipers**.
5. Switch **Courtesy wipe** on or off.

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy wipe** on or off.

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
2. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 417).
3. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

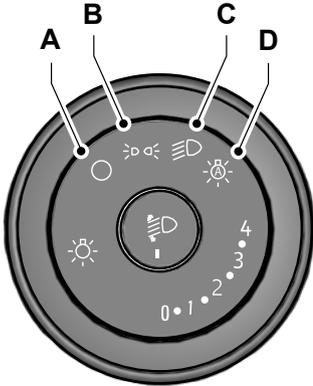
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 92). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 92). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 93).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps.
- C Headlamps.
- D Autolamps. See **What Are Autolamps** (page 98).

Rotate the control to make a selection.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: *Continuous activation only with headlamps on.*

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: *The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.*

Exterior Lighting

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.
3. Press to close the control.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

Headlamp Low Beam Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the headlamp low beam is on, this indicates that a headlamp low beam has failed.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Exterior Lighting

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Lighting**.
4. Select **Headlamp delay**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Lighting**.
5. Select **Headlamp delay**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Headlamp Delay**.
5. Select a setting.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Exterior Lighting



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

Switching the Side Marker Lamps On

Both Sides

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

One Side

1. Switch the ignition off.



2. Push the lever up or down to switch the side marker lamps on.

Switching the Side Marker Lamps Off

Side marker lamps turn off if any of the following occur:

- You switch all the lamps off.
- You switch the ignition on.

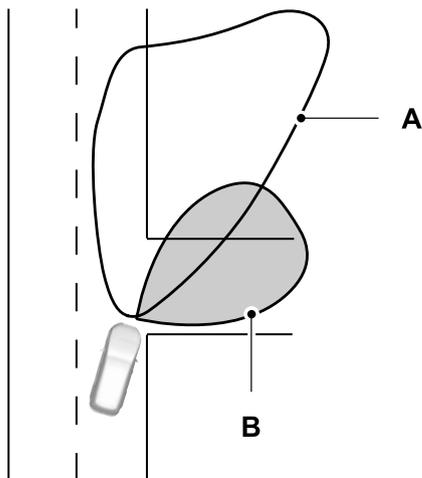
HOW DO CORNERING LAMPS WORK

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel or when you switch the turn signal lamps on. They turn on when the vehicle speed is below 40 km/h (25 mph).

Note: Only the cornering lamp on the side your vehicle is turning illuminates.

Note: Cornering lamps do not operate if you switch the front fog lamps on.

Exterior Lighting



- A Headlamp beam.
B Cornering lamp beam.

USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Note: The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the rear fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

EXTERIOR LAMP INDICATORS

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Exterior Lighting

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

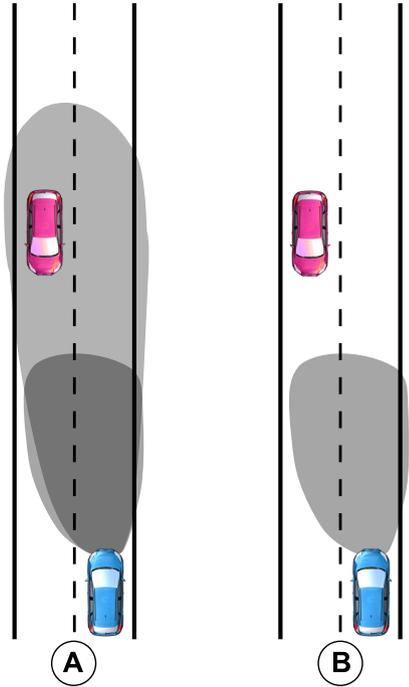
Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Exterior Lighting



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto highbeam** on or off.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Lighting**.
5. Switch **Auto highbeam** on or off.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.

Exterior Lighting

3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto High Beam** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

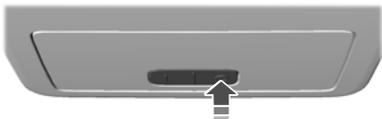
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

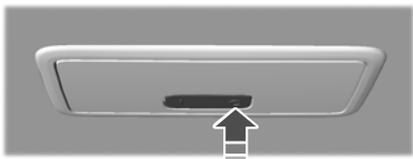
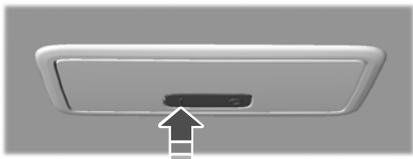
| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Front camera Low visibility Clean screen | The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front camera temporarily not available | The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front camera malfunction Service required | The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Interior Lighting - Vehicles Without: Map Reading Lamps

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

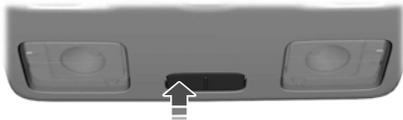
The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

Interior Lighting - Vehicles With: Map Reading Lamps

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

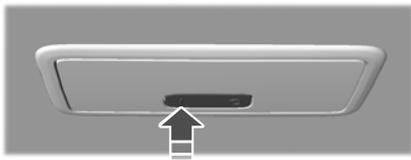
The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

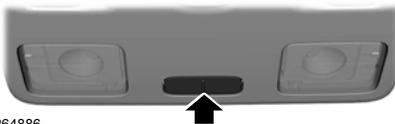


Note: Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



E264886

When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Windows

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to open.

Note: *The moonroof stops in the vent position.*

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global open** on or off.

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Windows**.
5. Switch **Global open** on or off.

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global open** on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 109).*

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global close** on or off.

Windows

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Windows**.
5. Switch **Global close** on or off.

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global close** on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.

2. Lift the window control switch within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

Windows

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



WARNING: When children are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.



Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

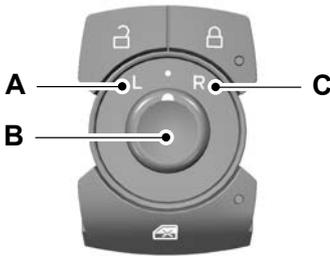
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror position.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS/SYNC 2.5

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on or off.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS/SYNC 2.5

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Exterior Mirrors

Note: *If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.*

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Mirrors**.
5. Switch **Auto fold** on or off.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS/SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on or off.

Moonroof

OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUNSHADE

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof. Slide the sun shade backward or forward to open or close it.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF

Opening the Moonroof



WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the rear of the control again to open the moonroof.

Closing the Moonroof



WARNING: When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.



WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the front of the control.

VENTING THE MOONROOF



WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

The moonroof stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

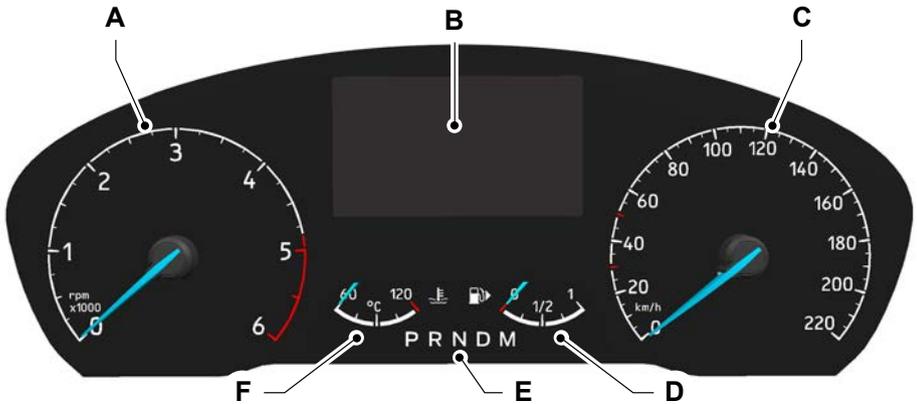
OVERRIDING MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK



Press and hold the front of the control within a few seconds to override bounce-back.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

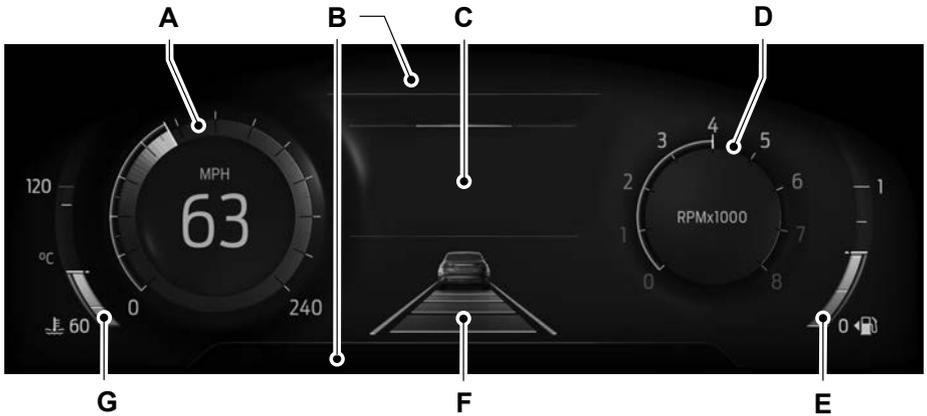


- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Automatic transmission position indicators.
- F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Instrument Cluster Overview



- A Speedometer.
- B Information bar.
- C Information display.
- D Tachometer.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Driver assistance information.
- G Engine coolant temperature gauge.

TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

Instrument Cluster

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (12 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System and Cross Traffic Alert Warning Lamp



If the system detects a fault, an indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



The engine coolant temperature gauge icon illuminates if the systems detects a malfunction.

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Warning Lamps



If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop.



Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Ignition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the system activates.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or flashes when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. If the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp flashes for approximately one minute and then remains illuminated. This occurs every time you switch the ignition on if the malfunction remains. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system. If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

Instrument Cluster

Parking Brake Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you. It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small. It illuminates when the system is not available.

Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the system off.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on. It illuminates white when the system is in standby mode. It illuminates green when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators



It illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.



Automatic High Beam Control On Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Change Engine Oil Indicator



It displays when the engine oil life is becoming depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Note: Do not ignore engine oil change indicators and information messages. Resulting component damage is not covered by the Warranty.

Change Engine Oil Now Indicators



If both indicators display, the engine oil life is seriously depleted. Engine torque reduces to 70% to further indicate the serious risk of engine damage. Have the engine oil changed immediately.



Note: Do not ignore engine oil change indicators and information messages. Resulting component damage is not covered by the Warranty.

Cross Traffic Alert Indicator



When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, the indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the information display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Direction Indicator



It flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

Eco Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Hazard Flasher Indicator



It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

High Beam Headlamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Lamps On Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamps on.

Lane Keeping Alert Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Lane Keeping Alert Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Normal Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Instrument Cluster

Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.



Slippery Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Sport Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Stability Control And Traction Control Indicator



It flashes during operation. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Trail Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

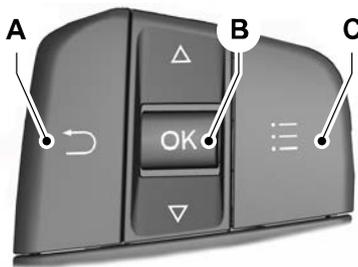
Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E258761



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

Menu button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

| Menu Item |
|---|
| <i>Trip computer 1 or Trip computer 2</i> |
| MyView |
| Driver assist. |
| Navigation |

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

| Menu Item |
|-----------|
| Audio |
| Phone |
| Settings |

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - EXCLUDING: MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView** and press the menu button.
3. Select a screen.
4. Press the **OK** button.

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView** and press the menu button.
3. Select a screen.
4. Press the **OK** button.

Hybrid Gauge

The Hybrid Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed.

When the available maximum power is limited the gauge shows gray lines showing the reduction in available power. During deceleration, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system being returned to the high voltage battery.

Enabling Hybrid Gauge

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Hybrid gauge**.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Language**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Measurement unit**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

3. Select **Temperature unit**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

SWITCHING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY AUDIBLE WARNINGS ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Chimes**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

TRIP SUMMARY

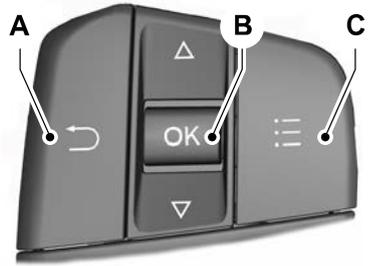
Displays the trip summary when you switch off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

Menu button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

| Menu Item |
|----------------|
| Select screens |
| Phone |
| Navigation |

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

| Menu Item |
|------------------|
| Audio |
| Settings |
| Display settings |

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - EXCLUDING: MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Adding Screens Using Select Screens

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Adding Screens Using Select Screens

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.

Hybrid Gauge

The Hybrid Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed.

When the available maximum power is limited the gauge shows gray lines showing the reduction in available power. During deceleration, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system being returned to the high voltage battery.

Enabling Hybrid Gauge

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Hybrid gauge**.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Language**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Measurement units**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

3. Select **Temperature units**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

SWITCHING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY AUDIBLE WARNINGS ON AND OFF

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Chimes**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

TRIP SUMMARY

Displays the trip summary when you switch off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

Resetting the Individual Trip Values

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.
3. Select **Reset individual values**.
4. Select the value to reset.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

CONFIGURING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.
3. Select **Configure view**.
4. Select the value to display.
5. Press the **OK** button.

TRIP DATA

Trip data includes the following:

- Trip Odometer - Registers the total distance since you last reset the value.
- Trip Timer - Registers the total time since you last reset the value.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption since you last reset the value.
- Average Speed - Indicates the average vehicle speed since you last reset the value.
- Distance to Empty - Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle could travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.
- Instantaneous Fuel - Indicates the current fuel consumption.

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

TRIP DATA

Trip data includes the following:

- Trip Odometer - Registers the total distance since you last reset the value.
- Trip Timer - Registers the total time since you last reset the value.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption since you last reset the value.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

Note: Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

ENABLING REMOTE START - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Switch **System** on.

Note: To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 421).

ENABLING REMOTE START - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Remote start**.
5. Switch **System** on.

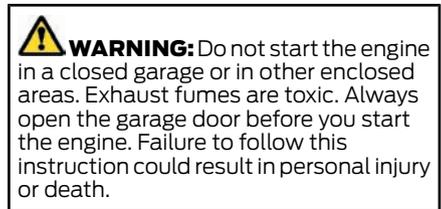
Note: To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 421).

ENABLING REMOTE START - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Activate remote start** On.

Note: To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 421).

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

Note: The turn signal lamps flash twice.

Note: The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

Note: The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

Note: You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

Note: The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

Note: A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Seats**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

Note: If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Duration**.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Remote start**.
5. Select **Climate control**.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

6. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Remote start**.
5. Select **Seats**.
6. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

Note: If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Remote start**.
5. Select **Duration**.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3, VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

Note: If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/HEATED STEERING WHEEL/SYNC 2.5

Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Seats and steering**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

Note: If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Duration**.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/HEATED STEERING WHEEL/SYNC 2.5

Climate Control Settings

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Remote start**.
5. Select **Climate control**.
6. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Remote start**.
5. Select **Seats and steering**.
6. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

Note: If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Remote start**.
5. Select **Duration**.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL/SYNC 3

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats and Steering Wheel**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

Note: If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on. The blower motor is set to the highest speed.

Note: When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Note: Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

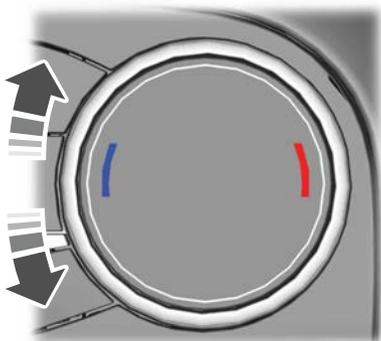
SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

Note: You can adjust the temperature between 15.5–29.5°C (60–85°F).

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

DIRECTING AIR TO THE WINDSHIELD AIR VENTS



DIRECTING AIR TO THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AIR VENTS



DIRECTING AIR TO THE FOOTWELL AIR VENTS



AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Note: When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

| Auto Mode Indicator Status | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| One indicator illuminated. | The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior. |
| Two indicators illuminated. | The blower motor speed is moderate. |
| Three indicators illuminated. | The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor. |

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Turn the temperature control clockwise past the highest setting to maximize defrosting.

Note: The temperature control springs back to the highest setting.

Note: When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on. The blower motor is set to the highest speed.

Note: When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise past the lowest setting to maximize cooling.

Note: The temperature control springs back to the lowest setting.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Note: Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Note: When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.

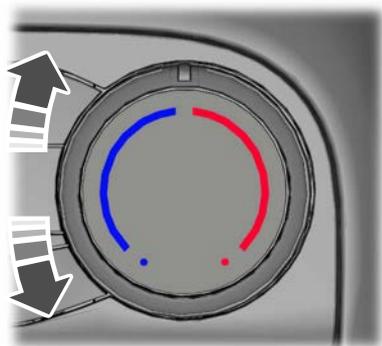
SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

DIRECTING AIR TO THE WINDSHIELD AIR VENTS



DIRECTING AIR TO THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AIR VENTS



DIRECTING AIR TO THE FOOTWELL AIR VENTS



Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.

2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Press and release **A/C**.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Seats

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



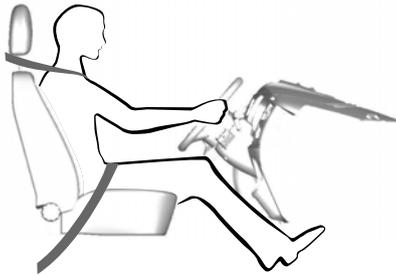
WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

Seats



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

Adjusting the Head Restraints

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.

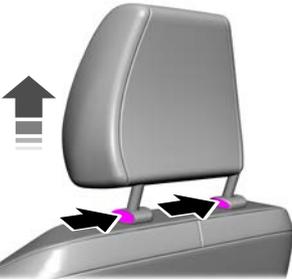
Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press the left-hand side locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.

Removing the Head Restraints

Front Head Restraints

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.

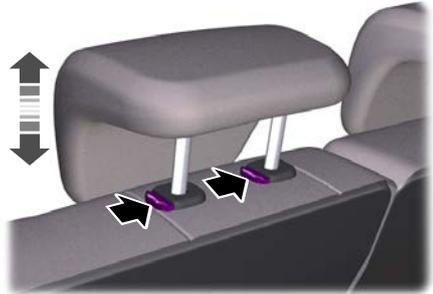


E251772

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Lift and remove the head restraint.

Rear Head Restraints

1. Fold the seat backrest forward so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E135401

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Lift and remove the head restraint.

MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: MANUAL LUMBAR



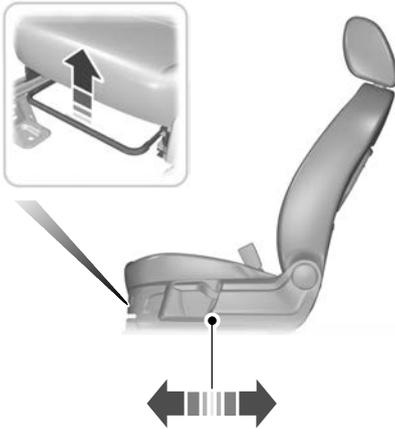
WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



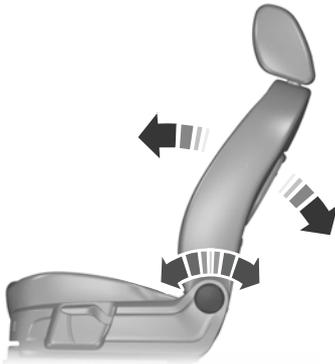
WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

Seats



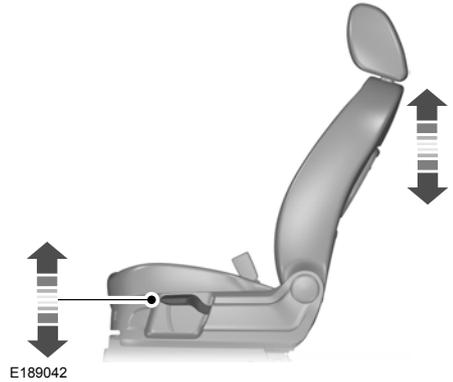
E147926

Adjusting the Seat Backrest



E265553

Adjusting the Seat Height



E189042

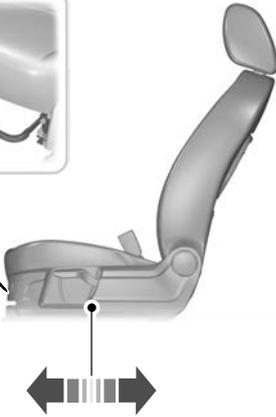
MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL LUMBAR

 **WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

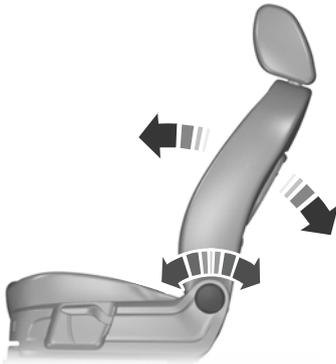
 **WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

Seats



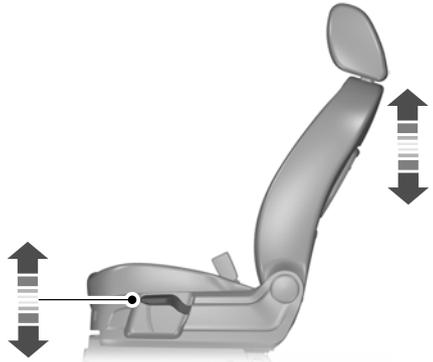
E147926

Adjusting the Seat Backrest



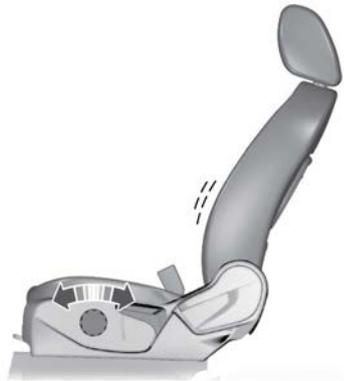
E265553

Adjusting the Seat Height



E189042

Adjusting the Lumbar Support



E161564

MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: MASSAGE SEATS



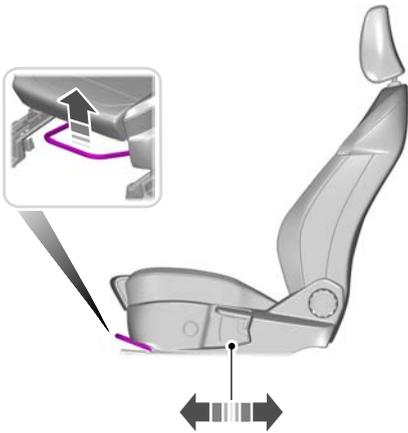
WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Seats

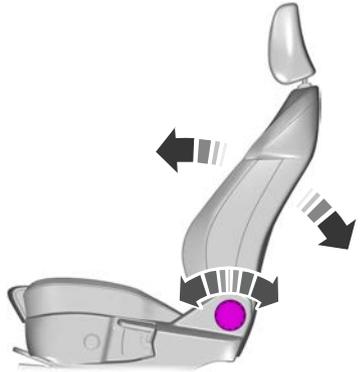
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



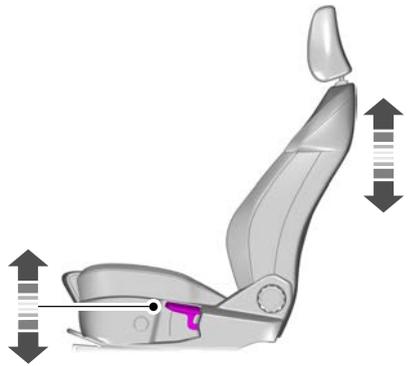
WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



Adjusting the Seat Backrest

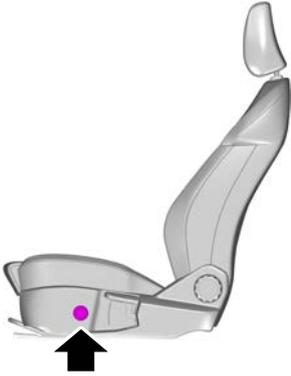


Adjusting the Seat Height



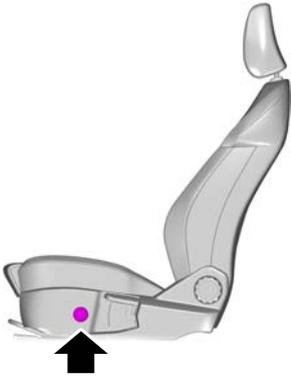
Seats

Adjusting the Lumbar Support



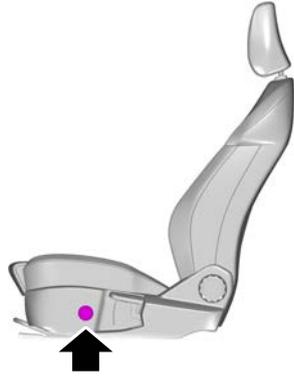
Press the button to display the seat settings.
Use the touchscreen to adjust the lumbar support.

Switching the Massage Seats On



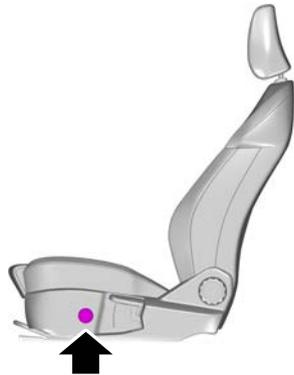
1. Press the button to display the seat settings.
2. Select **Massage**.

Switching the Massage Seats Off



1. Press the button to display the seat settings.
2. Select **Massage**.
3. Select **Adjust**.

Adjusting the Massage Seat Settings



1. Press the button to display the seat settings.
2. Select **Massage**.

Seats

3. Use the touchscreen to adjust the massage seat settings.

REAR SEATS

Folding the Seat Backrest



WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

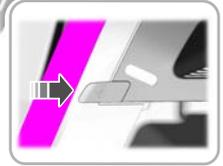
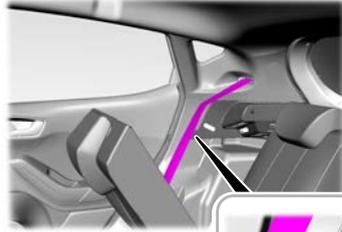
1. Lower the head restraints.



E248521

2. Press and hold the unlock buttons.
3. Push the seat backrest forward.

Note: Do not attempt to fold the rear seat cushion forward.



E249321

4. Place the seatbelts in the clips on the outermost trim.

Note: Make sure that the seatbelt is fully tightened into the retractor.

Unfolding the Seat Backrest



WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Seats

HEATED SEATS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not switch the heated seat on if the seat is wet.

The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.



Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature.

REMOVABLE SEAT COVERS

Removable Seat Cover Precautions



Do not use the seats if you have removed the seat covers.

Note: *The seat cover fabric may deteriorate with multiple washes.*

Removing the Seat Covers

Front Seats

Seat Backrest Cover

1. Recline the seat backrest.
2. Raise the head restraint.



3. Carefully unzip.
4. Carefully remove the seat cover.

Seats

Seat Cushion Cover

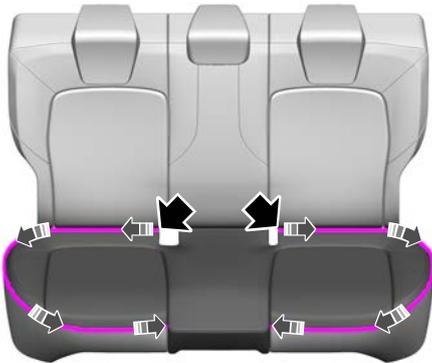
1. Recline the seat backrest.



2. Carefully unzip.
3. Carefully remove the seat cover.

Rear Seats

Seat Cushion Cover



1. Carefully unzip.
2. Carefully remove the seat cover.

Seat Backrest Covers

1. Raise the head restraint.
2. Fold the seat backrest.



3. Carefully unzip.
4. Carefully remove the seat cover.
5. Raise the head restraints.
6. Fold the seat backrest.



7. Carefully unzip.
8. Carefully remove the seat cover.

Seats

Installing the Seat Covers

Front Seats

Seat Backrest Cover

1. Recline the seat backrest.
2. Raise the head restraint.



3. Carefully close the zip fastener for approximately 100 mm (4 in).
4. Position the seat cover on the seat backrest.



5. Carefully close the zip fastener.

Seat Cushion Cover

1. Recline the seat backrest.



2. Carefully close the zip fastener for approximately 100 mm (4 in).
3. Position the seat cover on the seat cushion.

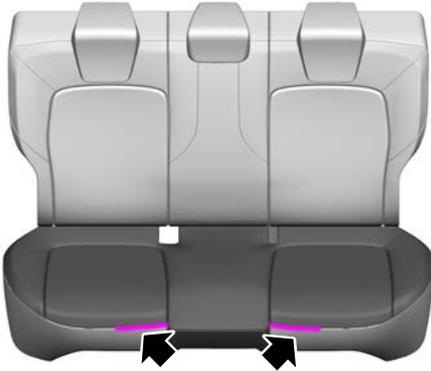


4. Carefully close the zip fastener.
5. Position and secure the seat cover over the front of the seat cushion.

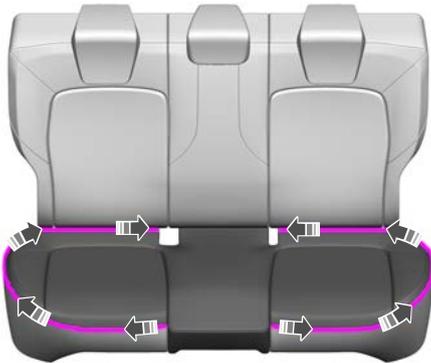
Seats

Rear Seats

Seat Cushion Cover



1. Carefully close the zip fasteners for approximately 100 mm (4 in).
2. Position the seat cover on the seat cushion.



3. Carefully close the zip fasteners.
4. Position and secure the seat cover over the front and rear central section of the seat cushion.

Seat Backrest Covers

1. Raise the head restraints.
2. Fold the seat backrest.



3. Carefully close the zip fastener.
4. Position and secure the seat cover at the side of the seat backrest.



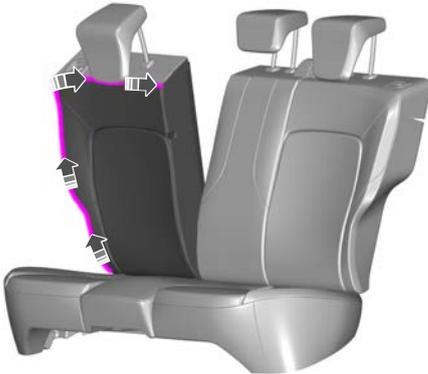
5. Carefully close the zip fastener.
6. Unfold the seat backrest.
7. Position and secure the seat cover at the bottom of the seat backrest.
8. Raise the head restraint.

Seats

9. Fold the seat backrest.



10. Carefully close the zip fastener.
11. Position and secure the seat cover at the side of the seat backrest.



12. Carefully close the zip fastener.
13. Unfold the seat backrest.
14. Position and secure the seat cover at the bottom of the seat backrest.

Rear Occupant Alert System

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Note: *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

Note: *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

Note: *The default setting is on.*

Note: *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

Rear Occupant Alert System

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



| Message |
|---------------------------------|
| Check rear seats for occupants. |

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

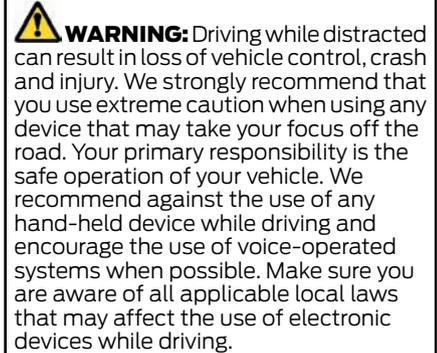
Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Behind the first row seats.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.



Press the audio button on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets are in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.

Cigar Lighter

CIGAR LIGHTER PRECAUTIONS



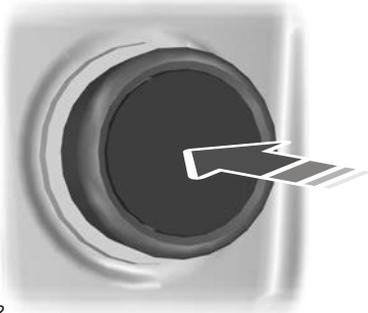
WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.*

USING THE CIGAR LIGHTER



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is below the climate control.



Wireless Accessory Charger

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running, or when SYNC is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Storage

CUP HOLDERS

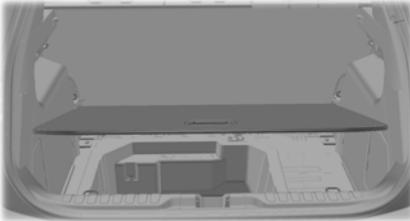
CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

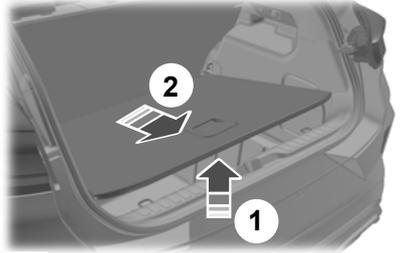
UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT UNDER FLOOR STORAGE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: MINI SPARE WHEEL

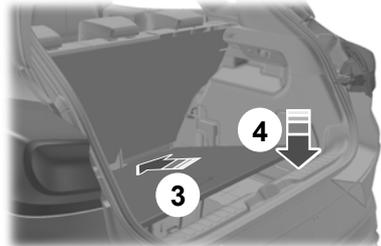


ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FLOOR

Lowering the Luggage Compartment Floor



1. Lift the luggage compartment floor.
2. Pull the luggage compartment floor rearward.



3. Push the luggage compartment floor toward the bottom of the rear seats.
- Note:** *The spring loaded supports move into position.*
4. Lower the luggage compartment floor.

Storage

Raising the Luggage Compartment Floor



1. Lift the luggage compartment floor.

Note: *The spring loaded supports move into position.*



2. Move the luggage compartment floor onto the spring loaded supports.
3. Lower the luggage compartment floor.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

IGNITION SWITCH



E247596

Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

Note: Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position III.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position III.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.



Starting and Stopping the Engine

1. Turn the key to position **II**.

Note: Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



3. Turn the key to position **III**.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until the glow plug indicator turns off before starting the engine.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



WARNING: Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.



WARNING: Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Make sure that you do the following:

- Use an extension cord suitable for outdoor use and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and engine block heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.

- Firmly connect the engine block heater cord and the extension cord.
- Check the extension cord for heat anywhere when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle.
- The protective cover seals the terminals of the engine block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Check the engine block heater system for proper operation before winter.

HOW DOES THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER WORK

The engine block heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

Note: *The engine block heater is most effective when the ambient temperature is below -18°C (0°F).*

USING THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

The engine block heater plug may be found in one of the following locations:

- Under the hood.
- In the front fog lamp bezel.
- Front lower grille.

Open the hinged cover and connect the engine block heater cord plug to an extension cord. See **Engine Block Heater Precautions** (page 169).

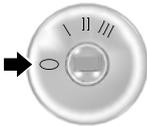
Starting and Stopping the Engine

The engine block heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It reaches maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the engine block heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position **0**.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position **0**.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



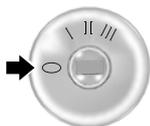
4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in

steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



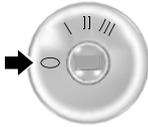
1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Starting and Stopping the Engine



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.

3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down the vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Switch **30min max idle** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Switch **Auto engine off** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

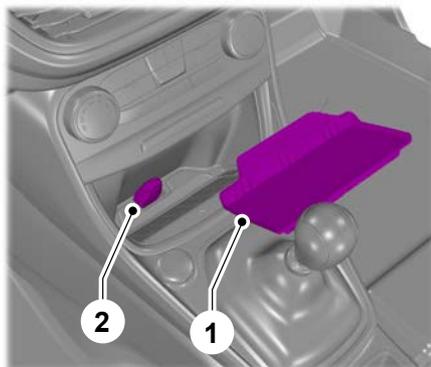
Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the passive key in the position shown. The buttons face the gear selector and the slim end points upward.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Cranking time exceeded | Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked. |
| Starting system malfunction | Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| No key detected | Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key. |

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

- Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

- Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.



- Turn the key to position **|||** and wait until the engine stops cranking.
- Release the accelerator pedal.
- Turn the key to position **|||**.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5.0 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 173).

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - DIESEL, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Why can I not start the engine?

- If you cannot start the engine, do the following:
1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Turn the key to position III until the engine starts.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - DIESEL, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

- If you cannot start the engine, do the following:
1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 173).

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

WHAT IS A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Your vehicle has a 48 volt mild hybrid system.

It is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

HOW DOES A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

The system uses regenerative charging during engine braking.

It switches the engine off when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. See **Setting the Engine Stop Speed** (page 185).

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

Regenerative charging results in a greater degree of engine braking.

Engine braking further increases following a brake pedal press. This is normal.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS



Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system is charging the battery.



Illuminates in the information display when the battery is assisting the powertrain in driving the vehicle.



Illuminates in the information display when the battery is providing a large amount of energy to the powertrain to support a higher rate of acceleration.



Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system cannot provide energy to the powertrain.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

| Message | Condition | Action |
|--|--|---|
| Auto Start/Stop Press a pedal to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine. |
| Auto Start/Stop Select neutral to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear. | Shift into neutral to restart the engine. |

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Condition | Action |
|--|--------------------------------|---|
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required | The system is not functioning. | Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself. |

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

| Message | Condition | Action |
|--|--|---|
| Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the brake pedal to restart the engine. |
| Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine. |

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine | The system is not functioning. | Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself. |
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required | The system is not functioning. | Restart the engine yourself. |

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. See **Setting the Engine Stop Speed** (page 185). The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

AUTO-START-STOP SETTINGS

SETTING THE ENGINE STOP SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.

3. Select **Rolling StartStop**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

SETTING THE ENGINE STOP SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Rolling StartStop**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

SETTING THE ENGINE STOP SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Rolling StartStop: Speed Threshold**.
4. Press a setting.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

Note: *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

Stopping the Engine in Neutral

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

Note: *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.

3. Release the clutch pedal.

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

Restarting the Engine in Neutral

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Select a gear.

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required | The system is not functioning. | Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself. |
| Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine | The system cannot restart the engine. | Shift into neutral. |
| Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine | The system cannot restart the engine. | Fully press the clutch pedal. |

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch **MAX A/C** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

With the vehicle in drive (D), press the brake pedal and slow the vehicle down to 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|--|---|
| Auto Start/Stop Press brake to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the brake pedal to restart the engine. |
| Auto Start/Stop Press a pedal to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine. |

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required | The system is not functioning. | Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself. |
| Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine | The system cannot restart the engine. | Shift into neutral. |
| Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine | The system cannot restart the engine. | Fully press the clutch pedal. |

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The transmission is in manual (M) or Neutral (N).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch **MAX A/C** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- You select Neutral (N).

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.

- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - GASOLINE



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - DIESEL



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments. Your Warranty does not cover repairs or replacement of parts needed to correct the effects of using such unadvised products.

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - E85

Do not modify the fuel system configuration or the components in the system. Do not replace the fuel system or the components with parts not specially designed to be used with E85.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification, or regular unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol (E85).



Fuel and Refueling

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel. Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.

Note: When using E85, your vehicle may have higher fuel consumption.

SWITCHING BETWEEN E85 AND GASOLINE

We do not recommend repeatedly alternating between E85 and gasoline. If you switch from using E85 to gasoline, or from gasoline to E85, add as much fuel as possible, at least half a tank.

Drive your vehicle immediately for a minimum of 8 km (5 mi) to allow it to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration. If you do not follow this procedure, you may experience a minor degradation in engine starting performance and slight fluctuations in engine speed at idle.

If you use E85 exclusively, we recommend that you fill the fuel tank with minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification at each scheduled oil change.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the glove compartment or in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

Fuel and Refueling



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 194).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

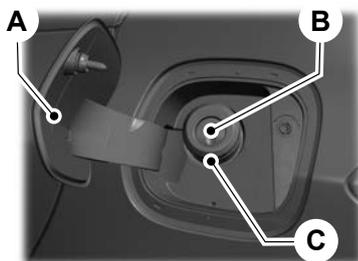
Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.

Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Fuel and Refueling

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

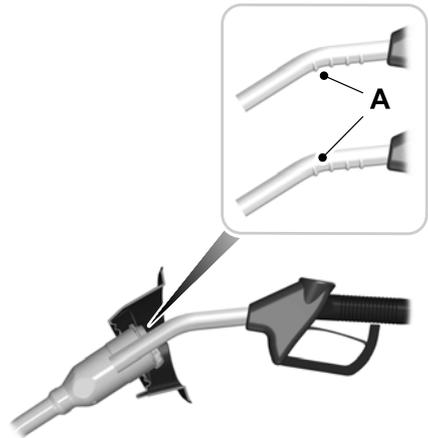
WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

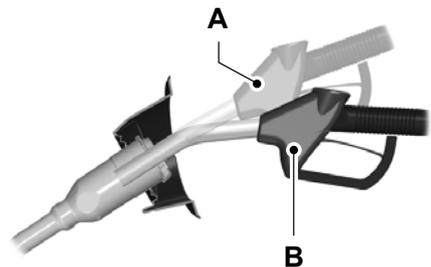
WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



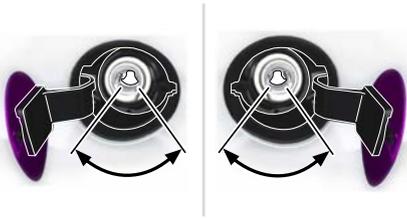
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump pipe nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



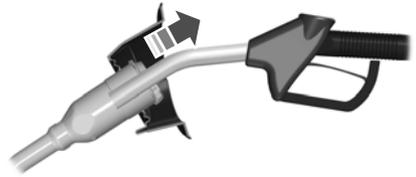
E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|------------------|
| All. | 42.2 L (9.3 gal) |

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.5L ECOBLUE

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|------------------|
| All. | 42.2 L (9.3 gal) |

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|------------------|
| All. | 45.2 L (9.9 gal) |

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test

procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

| Low | Medium | High | Extra-High | Combined | CO ₂ Emissions |
|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | g/km |
| 9.8–6 (29–47) | 7.8–4.8 (36–59) | 7.4–4.5 (38–63) | 9.5–5.8 (30–49) | 8.5–5.2 (33–54) | 119–154 |

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L ECOBLUE

| Low | Medium | High | Extra-High | Combined | CO₂ Emissions |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| L/100 km (mpg) | g/km |
| 5.7–5.2 (50–54) | 4.8–4.3 (59–66) | 4.4–3.8 (64–74) | 5.5–4.9 (51–58) | 5–4.5 (56–63) | 117–132 |

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

| Low | Medium | High | Extra-High | Combined | CO ₂ Emissions |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| L/100 km (mpg) | g/km |
| 8.7–8.3 (32–34) | 6.5–6.1 (43–46) | 5.9–5.6 (48–50) | 7.2–6.9 (39–41) | 6.8–6.5 (42–43) | 148–155 |

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|-----------------------|---|
| Fuel level low | An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle. |
| Check fuel fill inlet | Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed. |

Diesel Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the information display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the information display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

 **WARNING:** When the **Exhaust filter cleaning** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

 **WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Note: Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

Note: Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, or when the system is at the point of oversaturation, the powertrain warning lamp and the malfunction indicator lamp illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. You may not be able to initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Diesel Particulate Filter

DISEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|--|
| Exhaust filter cleaning | Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature will return to normal levels. This message is NORMAL. |
| Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean | The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off. |
| Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now | |
| Exhaust filter at limit Clean now | The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off. |
| Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now | |
| Exhaust filter drive completed | Your diesel particulate filter is clean. |
| Exhaust filter cleaned | Your diesel particulate filter is clean (OCR Only). |
| Exhaust filter cleaning stopped | The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR Only). |
| Exhaust filter over limit Service now | You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your new vehicle warranty may not cover this damage. |

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

Selective catalytic reduction is an engine emission control system that reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.



WARNING: Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.



WARNING: Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

Note: *The use and refilling of AdBlue® is mandatory for the vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store the AdBlue® container in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

- Do not store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.
- AdBlue® is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.



The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

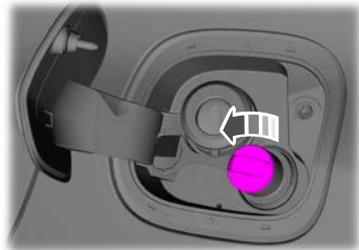
Note: It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).

Note: If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP

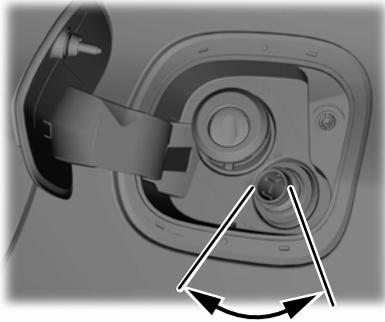
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.
- Note:** *The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.*
5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
 6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

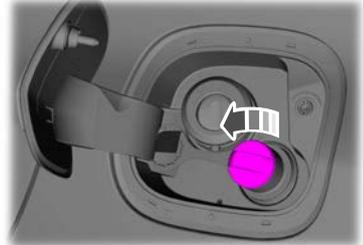
FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.

2. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
 4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
 5. Pour the fluid into the tank.
- Note:** *The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.*
6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
 7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
 8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
 9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
 10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **AdBlue® info**.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **AdBlue® info**.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption but could be more under extreme conditions such as heavy towing.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|------------------|
| All. | 11.9 L (2.6 gal) |

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| AdBlue® HAMJ-M99C130-xx | WSS-M99C130-A |

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level

is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

AdBlue® Level

| Message | Action |
|---|--|
| AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon | Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls | Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine | The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display. |

Note: When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

Note: If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

AdBlue® Malfunction

| Message | Action |
|---|--|
| AdBlue® system malfunction Service required | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls | Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® system Service required to start engine | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is that noise after switching off the engine?

- When you switch off the engine the selective catalytic reduction system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

Catalytic Converter

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 338).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 192).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

The gasoline particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful particulates from the exhaust emissions.

HOW DOES THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

Particles in the exhaust emissions collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles captured by the filter into harmless gases.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp could illuminate or a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust emissions temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction indicator lamp.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|--|---|
| Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.• Avoid prolonged engine idling.• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM. |
| Exhaust filter over limit Service now | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive at a moderate speed.• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

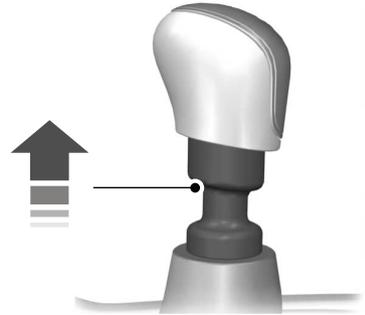
Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

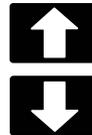
Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.

CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 224).

CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Manual Transmission

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|--|---------------|
| Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx | WSS-M6C65-A2 |

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

LOW (L) - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PADDLE SHIFTERS

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 331).

MANUAL (M) - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 220).

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 331).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PADDLE SHIFTERS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

P R N D L

Note: The position could illuminate on the selector.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

P R N D M

Note: The position could illuminate on the selector.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS



Shift indicators illuminate when shifting gear is recommended.



MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

SHIFTING USING THE PADDLE SHIFTERS

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear.

Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.

Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.

Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gear.

Automatic Transmission

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.



Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Note: Hold the right paddle for a few seconds to turn off the feature manually.

Note: The feature switches off if neither paddle is pulled within a short period of time.

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 331).



Shift to manual (M) to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Shift into drive (D) to switch the feature off.

BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK

WHAT IS BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK

Brake shift interlock allows you to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stooplamps are working.



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

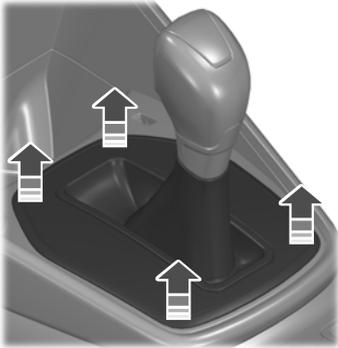


WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

USING BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK

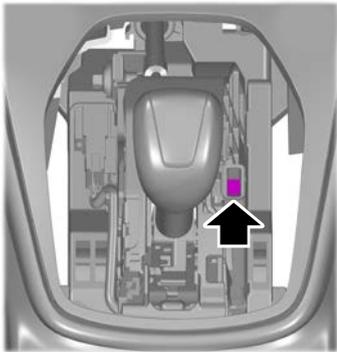
Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the selector lever out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

Automatic Transmission



E269819

1. Remove the panel.



2. Locate the access hole.
3. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, push the brake shift interlock lever toward the front of your vehicle and hold it there.
4. Move the selector lever from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Install the panel.
6. Press the brake pedal, start the engine and release the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|--|--|
| Transmission malfunction Service now | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Transmission limited function See manual | The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Transmission too hot Press brake Transmission overheating Stop safely | The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, leave the engine running and allow the transmission to cool. Wait until the message disappears. |
| Transmission not in Park | Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P). |

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country where your vehicle was originally built, the stoplamps could flash during heavy braking. The hazard warning flashers could also turn on when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 359).

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

Brakes



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 410).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 418).

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS

 **WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn. Have the system checked.

There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake switch. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 383).*

Parking Brake - Manual Transmission

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Park brake applied | You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Park brake applied | You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cross Traffic Braking

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING

The system is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision by using the sensors on the rear of your vehicle to detect a possible collision and applying the brakes.

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING WORK

The system only reacts for vehicles approaching from the sides when you shift into reverse (R).

If the system detects a vehicle approaching your vehicle, it provides a warning through the cross traffic alert system. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 299).

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Take action as soon as you notice the system applying the brakes in order to remain in control of your vehicle, the system does not do this for you.

Note: You need to enable cross traffic alert for the system to function.

CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection, for example, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

Note: Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Cross Traffic Braking

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, switch the system off manually after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Braking** on or off.

OVERRIDING CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply. Bring your vehicle to a stop a safe distance away from the obstacle.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual | Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and cross traffic alert systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible. |
| Reverse Brake Assist malfunction | Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Reverse Brake Assist off | Displays when cross traffic braking is off. |

Cross Traffic Braking

CROSS TRAFFIC BRAKING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is cross traffic braking unavailable?

- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **Cross Traffic Alert** (page 299).
- The vehicle has sustained a rear end impact. Contact an authorized dealer to have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An ABS, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Cross traffic braking resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure there are no blocked or faulted sensors. See **Cross Traffic Alert** (page 299).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.

Note: *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning cross traffic braking to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist makes it easier for you to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

To switch hill start assist on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

| Menu Item | Action |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Driver assist. | Press the menu button. |
| Hill Start Assist | Press the OK button. |

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

Hill Start Assist

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Hill start assist**.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Hill Start Assist** on or off.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Hill start assist not available | Displays when the system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: ST



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

Note: Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **What Is MyKey** (page 55).

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING - EXCLUDING: ST

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Traction Control

TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|--|--|
| Traction control off | The status of the traction control system after you switched it off. |
| Traction control on | The status of the traction control system after you switched it on. |
| Turn off traction control to aid in getting unstuck? | You can switch off traction control on the steering wheel to allow the wheels to spin. If you switched traction control off, the system turns on when your vehicle speed is greater than 25 km/h (15 mph). |

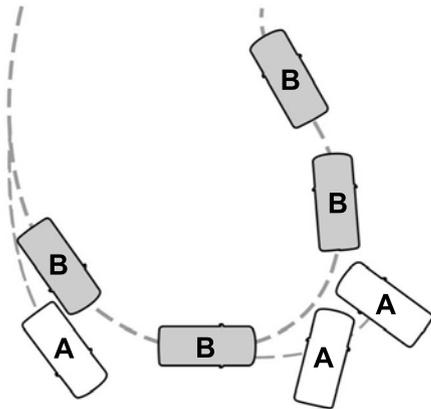
Stability Control

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: ST

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - ST



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport, Track or Drift mode when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Reducing Stability Control

ESC

Press the button on the instrument panel. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

Note: *Stability control only reduces and is not fully switched off.*

Note: *If you switch stability control to reduced mode, traction control turns off.*

Note: *Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Adaptive cruise control is disabled when you select this mode.*

Stability Control

Note: Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **What Is MyKey** (page 55).

Switching the System Off



Press and hold the button on the instrument panel for a few seconds to switch the system off. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

Note: If you switch stability control off, traction control also turns off

Note: Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.

Note: Adaptive cruise control is disabled when you select this mode.

Note: Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **What Is MyKey** (page 55).

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR - ST



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING - ST

STABILITY CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when you switch the system to reduced mode or off. It also illuminates if you select track mode.

STABILITY CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|--|--|
| ESC Sport mode | The status of the stability control system after you switched it to reduced mode. |
| ESC off | The status of the stability control system after you switched it off. |
| ESC on | The status of the stability control system after you switched it on. |
| Turn off traction control to aid in getting unstuck? | You can switch off traction control on the steering wheel to allow the wheels to spin. If you switched traction control off, the system turns on when your vehicle speed is greater than 25 km/h (15 mph). |

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

 **WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 **WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

 **WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: *The system might detect a connected trailer, if so, it turns parking aid off.*

Note: *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free of debris. Accumulation of dirt, snow or ice over the sensors can affect the accuracy of the system.*

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: *When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the parking aids off. See MyKey™ (page 55).*

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

Parking Aids

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the rear parking aid off.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed, or when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

SIDE PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. To reset the steering wheel angle information, drive straight for at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, the system detects obstacles within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, the system detects obstacles within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



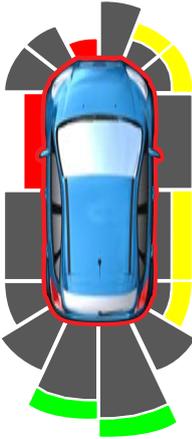
The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

| Message | Action |
|--|---|
| Park Pilot malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Check Park Pilot | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual | A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Check front Park Pilot | The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Parking Aids

| Message | Action |
|-------------------------|--|
| Check rear Park Pilot | The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front Park Pilot On Off | Displays the park aid status. |
| Rear Park Pilot On Off | Displays the park aid status. |

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

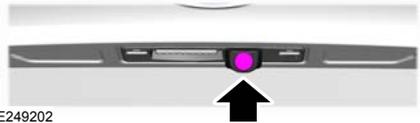
Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA



The rear view camera is on the liftgate.

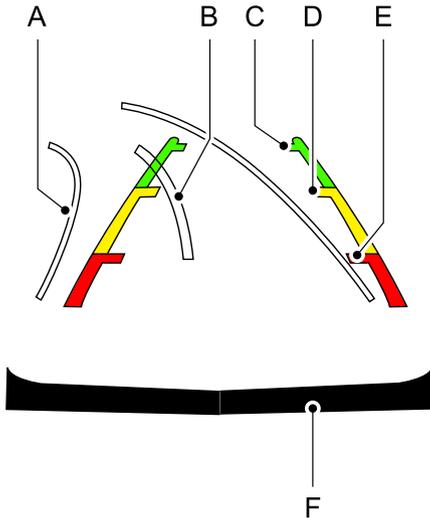
REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Rear View Camera



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT

 **WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

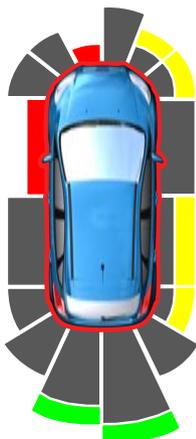
This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Rear View Camera

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

You can switch this feature on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

You can switch this feature on or off using the touchscreen. The default setting is off. See **Settings** (page 448).

180 Degree Camera

WHAT IS THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA

The 180 degree camera provides an extended image of the area behind your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

When you switch the 180 degree view on, the view splits into three images. You can use the right and left outer images when reversing to check for cross traffic and pedestrians.

When you use the 180 degree camera view, objects behind your vehicle are shown extremely stretched and do not appear as actual ratio.

180 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects.*

Note: *Guide lines do not appear when you switch the 180 degree view on.*

SWITCHING THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

When you shift to reverse (R) and the rear view camera image appears, press the button in the upper left corner of the touch screen to switch the 180 degree view on. Press the button again to switch it off.

The 180 degree view turns off when you shift into park (P) or into any forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.

Note: *Whenever you shift to reverse (R) the standard rear view camera image with guidelines is the default view.*

Active Park Assist

WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF



The active park assist button is next to the gearshift lever.

Press the button to activate active park assist. Press again to switch between parking modes.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, press the active park assist button or turn the steering wheel.

Note: *It also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 9 km/h (6 mph).*

Brake System Intervention

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

Note: *This could cause the parking assistance to cancel.*

ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE

1. Press the active park assist button.

Note: *The system searches for parallel parking spaces on the passenger side. Press the active park assist button again to make the system search for perpendicular spaces.*

2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

Active Park Assist

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
6. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

7. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE

1. Press the active park assist button twice.
2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
6. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

7. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

Note: Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.

Note: When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.

EXITING A PARKING SPACE

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Use the turn signal lever to choose the direction to leave.
3. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
4. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

Note: After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

Active Park Assist

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|-------------------|---|
| Active Park Fault | The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

- The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

- You have switched traction control off.
- The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

- The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
- The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
- There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.

- There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
- The parking space is more than 1.5 m (1.6 yd) or less than 0.5 m (0.5 yd) away from your vehicle.
- Your vehicle's speed is greater than 35 km/h (21.7 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 19 km/h (11.8 mph) for perpendicular parking.
- You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

- An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
- Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.
- Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
- The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
- A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.
- A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
- The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
- The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

Cruise Control

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press either the SET+ or SET- buttons to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The indicator changes color in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the SET+ button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET+ button to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

SET-

Press the SET- button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET- button to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

Cruise Control

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

 Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

 Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

 Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

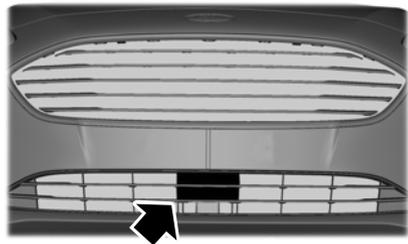
WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

Adaptive Cruise Control

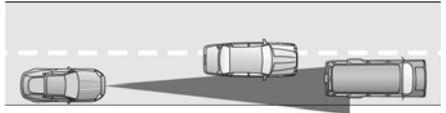
Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 266).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection Issues Can Occur:

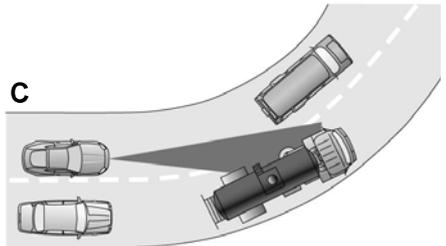
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 251).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

The system cancels if any of the following occur:

- You apply the parking brake.
- You unfasten the seatbelt if your vehicle is stationary.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.
- The tires lose traction.

Adaptive Cruise Control

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Drive to the required speed.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



E249552

Adaptive Cruise Control

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h (20 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET-

Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

| Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles | Gap Distance | Dynamic Behavior |
|--|--------------|------------------|
| 1 | Closest. | Sport. |
| 2 | Close. | Normal. |
| 3 | Medium. | Normal. |
| 4 | Far. | Comfort. |

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



E249552

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

| Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles | Gap Distance | Dynamic Behavior |
|--|--------------|------------------|
| 1 | Closest. | Sport. |
| 2 | Close. | Normal. |
| 3 | Medium. | Normal. |
| 4 | Far. | Comfort. |

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

RES

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

CAN

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

Note: The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES

Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Cruise control**.
4. Select **Mode**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain the set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Cruise control**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to vehicles in front of you and automatic braking does not activate. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal**.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses radar and camera sensors to help keep your vehicle in the middle of the lane by applying continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center on highways.

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally.*

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Note: *The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.*

Note: *If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.*

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 253).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go on.
- You have your hands on the steering wheel at all times.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- The vehicle is centered in the lane.

Note: *If it does not detect valid lane markings, the system stays inactive until valid markings are available.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 254).

Lane Centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- Limited steering torque input is applied.
- Areas under construction or new infrastructure.
- When modifications to the steering system have been made.
- When using a spare tire.
- In high wind conditions.

Note: *The driving assistance torque is limited and may not be sufficient for all driving situations such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, such as inclement weather or direct sunlight, the system could deviate from the center line or could cancel.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel. See **Visual Search** (page 25).



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Note: *The correct requirements must be met before you can switch the system on. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 262).*

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 263).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings are available and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive Cruise Control

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings are available and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system slows the vehicle while maintaining steering control.

RES

If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must contribute to the steering control and press and release the button or briefly press the accelerator pedal to regain full system performance.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings are crossed.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: *The system disables until the next key cycle if your vehicle slows down due to driver inactivity twice within a key cycle.*

You initiate a cancellation when the system is active and you switch the turn signal lamp on. The system immediately cancels. The system remains in standby mode as long as the turn signal lamp is engaged. The system automatically re-activates once the vehicle is centered in a lane and the turn signal lamp is switched off.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display when you switch lane centering on.

When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates the system is active and applying steering torque assistance input to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber with an audible tone and then gray indicates a system automatic cancellation.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

HOW DOES INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Intelligent adaptive cruise control combines speed sign recognition and navigation map data with adaptive cruise control to adjust the cruise set speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system detects new speed signs, the set speed updates.

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. The intelligent adaptive cruise control system and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 314).

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Cruise control**.
4. Select **Mode**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Cruise control**.
5. Select **Intelligent**.

SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Intelligent**.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



E265663

Adaptive Cruise Control

If you select this mode, a bracket appears around the set speed and the detected speed limit sign in the instrument cluster display.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

| Message | Action |
|---|--|
| Adaptive cruise control not available Sensor blocked See manual | Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility. |
| Adaptive cruise control not available | Displays when the system is not available. |
| Adaptive cruise control malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Cruise control active Adaptive braking off | You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off. |

Adaptive Cruise Control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

| Message | Action |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Keep hands on steering wheel | Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input. |
| Lane centring assist not available | Lane centering assist conditions exist preventing the system from being available. |
| Resume control | The system is going to cancel and you must take control. |

Adaptive Cruise Control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

| Message | Action |
|--|--|
| Adaptive cruise control Speed sign recognition not available | Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings, for example steering, gear shifting, handling and powertrain response.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - EXCLUDING: ST

The button is on the center console.



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - ST

The buttons are on the steering wheel.



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes. Release the button to confirm your selected drive mode.



Press the button to directly turn sport mode on and off.

DRIVE MODES

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: This is the default mode each time you switch the ignition on.

SLIPPERY



Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

SPORT - EXCLUDING: ST



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: Auto-start-stop could switch off when you select this mode.

SPORT - ST



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: Press the button on the steering wheel to directly select this mode.

Note: Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.

TRACK - ST



Vehicle settings suited for track driving.

Note: Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.

Note: Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.

Note: Lane keeping system is disabled when you select this mode.

Note: Track mode is not intended for use on public roads.

Note: Stability control is switched to reduced mode when you select this mode.

Drive Mode Control

TRAIL - EXCLUDING: ST

Note: *Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.*



Vehicle settings suited for driving on unpaved roads.

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Drive mode not available | The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Eco coach**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

The calculated trip summary is shown as four colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

The calculated trip summary is shown as four percentage values. The percentage values increase as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The percentage values indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

How to improve your efficiency:

- Acceleration: Light to moderate acceleration improves your score.
- Braking: We recommend slow and steady braking.
- Speed: Maintain reasonable vehicle speeds for best scores.
- Gear shifting: Shifting the gears at the right moment improves your score.
- Compliance: Follow the recommendations to improve your score.

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a percentage value for gear shifting.*

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Eco behaviour**.
4. Select the screen on your main screen. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 125).

Efficient Drive Mode

WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient drive mode is a predictive coach that uses the vehicle navigation data. It provides predictive route information to help you drive more efficiently by indicating when you can release the accelerator pedal.

SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist.**
2. Select **Eco coach.**
3. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings.**
3. Select **Eco coach.**
4. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

DISPLAYING THE EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist.**

TRIP SUMMARY

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as five colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for your driving behavior, acceleration, deceleration, speed, gear shifting and compliance score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

Note: *The compliance score assesses how well you follow the efficient drive mode indicator.*

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView.**
2. Select **Eco coach.**
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Press the **OK** button.

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes.

The button is on the center console.

1. Select **Eco.**

Efficient Drive Mode

2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Display settings**.
4. Select **Eco coach**.
5. Switch **Eco advice** on.
6. Switch the engine off.

EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS



It illuminates grey when the system recommends you to decelerate.

It changes color when you start to decelerate.

The additional display ring next to the efficient drive mode indicator can provide information about speed limit, intersection, freeway ramp, roundabout, stop sign, slope, curve or crosswalk.

Local Hazard Information

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 421).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.
8. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Local hazard information**.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Local hazard information**.

Speed Limiter

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button

SET-

upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

CAN

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

Speed Limiter

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES Press to resume the set speed limiter.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the **RES** button.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING



Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING



Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

Note: *The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*

Note: *If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.*

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+ You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

SET-

ADJUSTING THE SPEED LIMIT TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Speed limiter**.

4. Select **Intelligent**.
5. Select **Tolerance**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

ADJUSTING THE SPEED LIMIT TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Speed limiter**.
5. Select **Intelligent**.
6. Select **Tolerance**.
7. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

ADJUSTING THE SPEED LIMIT TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limiter**.
4. Press **Intelligent**.
5. Press **Tolerance**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

CAN Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES Press to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the **RES** button.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the instrument cluster display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Speed limiter**.
4. Switch **Intelligent** off.

Note: If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the instrument cluster display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Speed limiter**.
5. Select **Normal** or **Intelligent**.

Note: If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limiter**.
4. Switch **Intelligent** off.

Note: If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror. When you switch the system on, a graphic of lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.



Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



E270719

Press the button on the turn signal stalk.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Lane keeping system**.
4. Select **Mode**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Lane Keeping System

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Lane keeping system**.
5. Select **Mode**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the three modes in the instrument cluster display:

- Alert mode.
- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

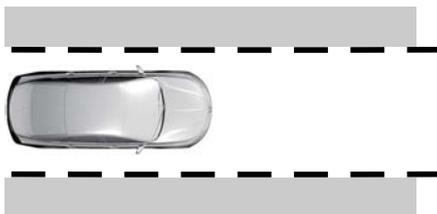
Note: *The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey, the mode is set to alert.*

ALERT MODE

WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode provides steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel if it detects an unintended lane departure.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Lane keeping system**.
4. Select **Intensity**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Note: *This setting does not affect the aid mode.*

Lane Keeping System

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Lane keeping system**.
5. Select **Intensity**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

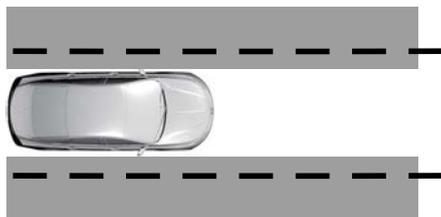
Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Note: The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

ALERT AND AID MODE

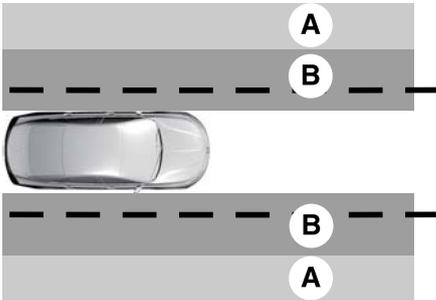
WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode combines both, alert mode and aid mode.

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.

Lane Keeping System



A Alert.

B Aid.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

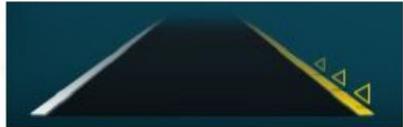
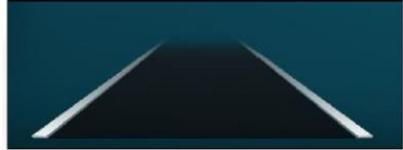


It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on and aid mode or alert and aid mode are selected.



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on and alert mode is selected.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



When you switch the system on, a graphic of lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.

The lane markings illuminate green or white if the system is available.

The lane markings illuminate grey if the system is unavailable.

The lane markings do not display if the system is off.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Lane Keeping System

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



E270719

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the turn signal stalk.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Note: *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

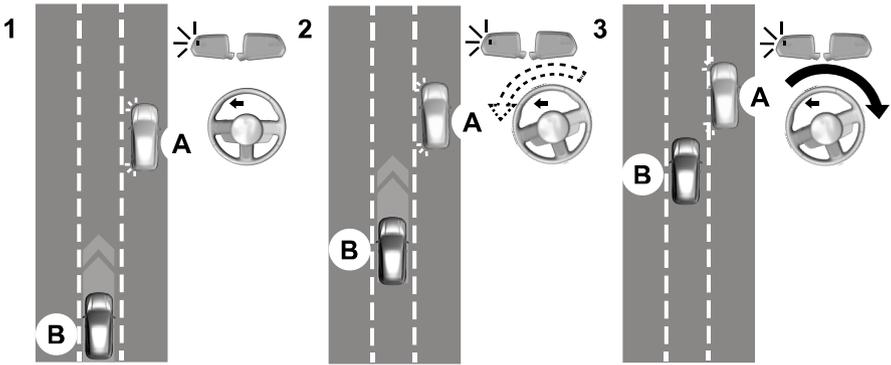
Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 292).

Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle. |
| Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked | Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked. |
| Blind Spot Assist System malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Note: When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 294).

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



E270719

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the turn signal stalk.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist with trailer coverage detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of the vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of the trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 294).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 294).

Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

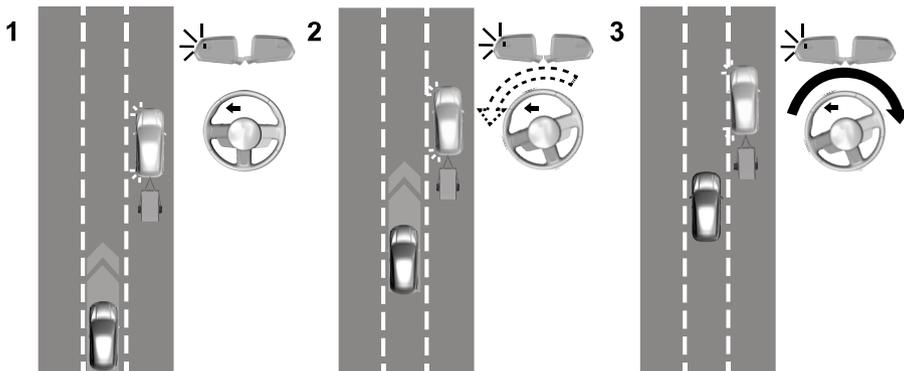
Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Lane Keeping System

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 292).

Lane Keeping System

Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Information Messages

| Message | Details |
|---|--|
| Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage (page 294). |
| Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked | Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked. |
| Blind Spot Assist System malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|--|--|
| Lane keeping system malfunction Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front camera temporarily not available | The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable. |
| Front camera Low visibility Clean screen | The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly. |
| Front camera malfunction Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Keep hands on steering wheel | The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel. |

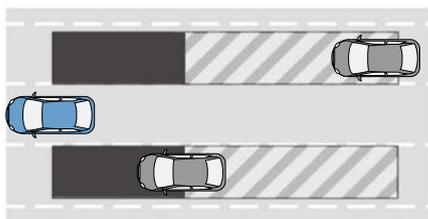
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Switch **BLIS** on or off.

If you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Switch **BLIS** on or off.

If you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

To switch blind spot information system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **BLIS** on or off.

If you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Blind Spot Information System

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

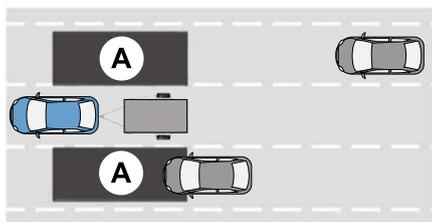
Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



E293525

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

Blind Spot Information System

Note: *The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **BLIS**.
4. Select **Trailer**.
5. Select **None**.
6. Press the **OK** button.

When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system turns off and a message appears when a trailer is connected, but not set up or selected.*

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **BLIS**.
5. Select **Trailer**.
6. Select **None**.
7. Press the **OK** button.

When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system turns off and a message appears when a trailer is connected, but not set up or selected.*

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

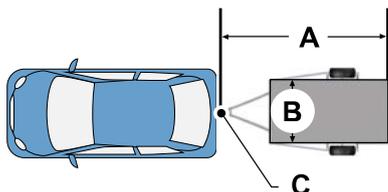
1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **BLIS**.
4. Switch **Trailer BLIS** on or off.

When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and the alert indicators flash twice.

Blind Spot Information System

Note: The system turns off and a message appears when a trailer is connected, but not set up or selected.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5



E293526

- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

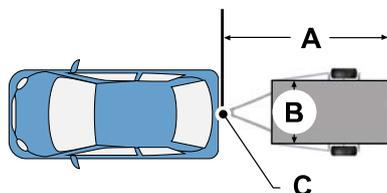
1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **BLIS**.
4. Select **Trailer lengths**.
5. Select **Trailer A**, **Trailer B** or **Trailer C**.
6. Select the trailer length at the closest available value.

Note: Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.

7. Press the **OK** button.

Note: If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5



E293526

- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **BLIS**.
5. Select **Trailer**.
6. Select **Trailer A**, **Trailer B** or **Trailer C**.
7. Select the trailer length at the closest available value.

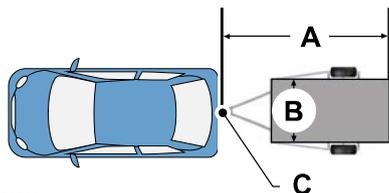
Note: Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.

8. Press the **OK** button.

Note: If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.

Blind Spot Information System

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3



E293526

- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **BLIS**.
4. Press **Set Trailer Lengths**.
5. Press **Trailer A**, **Trailer B** or **Trailer C**.
6. Select the trailer length at the closest available value.

Note: Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.

7. Press the **OK** button.

Note: If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.

SELECTING A TRAILER - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

If you select a trailer in the instrument cluster display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **BLIS**.
4. Select **Trailer**.
5. Select **Trailer A**, **Trailer B** or **Trailer C**.
6. Press the **OK** button.

SELECTING A TRAILER - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

If you select a trailer in the instrument cluster display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **BLIS**.
5. Select **Trailer**.
6. Select **Trailer A**, **Trailer B** or **Trailer C**.
7. Press the **OK** button.

Blind Spot Information System

SELECTING A TRAILER - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **BLIS**.
4. Press **Trailer Selection**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|--|---|
| BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual | Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked. |
| BLIS deactivated Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle. |
| BLIS malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Note: *If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.*

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle. |
| Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked | Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked. |
| Blind Spot Assist System malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

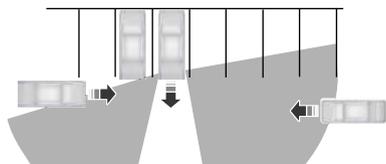
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. See **How Does Cross Traffic Braking Work** (page 229). If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system does not apply the brakes if you override it by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

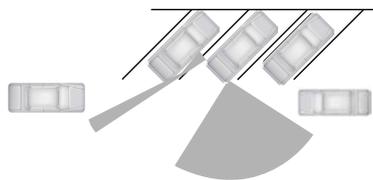
HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 6 km/h (4 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.

Cross Traffic Alert

- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h (4 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

Note: *If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Switch **Cross traffic alert** on or off.

Note: *If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

Note: *If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

Cross Traffic Alert

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the center display.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: If the arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Cross traffic alert | Displays instead of arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic. |
| Cross traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual | Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Cross traffic malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle. |
| Cross traffic alert Applying brakes | Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic. |

Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above. Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



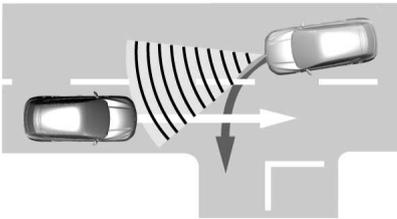
If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

| Level of Functionality | Details |
|--|---|
| Alert | When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds. |
| Brake support | The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal. |
| Automatic emergency braking - vehicles without adaptive cruise control | The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. The system is active at speeds up to 120 km/h (75 mph). |
| Automatic emergency braking - vehicles with adaptive cruise control | The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. |

Pre-Collision Assist

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK

The pre-collision assist system could apply brakes if you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 30 km/h (18.6 mph).



PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

Pre-Collision Assist

The system is not designed to detect vehicles that are traveling in a different direction.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

Pre-Collision Assist

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

Note: *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance indication** on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

| Vehicle Speed | System Sensitivity | Distance Indicator Color | Distance Gap | Time Gap |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 100 km/h (62 mph) | Normal. | Gray. | Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft) | Greater than 0.9 seconds. |
| | | Yellow. | 17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft). | 0.6–0.9 seconds. |
| | | Red. | Less than 17 m (55.8 ft). | Less than 0.6 seconds. |

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Pre-collision assist**.
5. Switch **Distance indication** on or off.

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

Pre-Collision Assist

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-collision Assist**.
4. Select **Alert sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Pre-collision assist**.
5. Select **Alert sensitivity**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

DISTANCE ALERT

WHAT IS DISTANCE ALERT

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

Note: *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-collision Assist**.
4. Select **Alert sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Pre-Collision Assist

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Pre-collision assist**.
5. Select **Alert sensitivity**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Active braking** on or off.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Pre-collision assist**.
5. Switch **Active braking** on or off.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Active Braking** on or off.

Pre-Collision Assist

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 304).

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive steering** on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Pre-collision assist**.
5. Switch **Evasive steering** on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

Pre-Collision Assist

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering** on or off.

Note: *Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates when the system is not available.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|--|
| Pre-collision assist not available | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked | The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message could display.

| Cause | Action |
|---|--|
| The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed. | Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction. |
| The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display. | Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction. |
| Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals. | The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve. |

Pre-Collision Assist

| Cause | Action |
|--|---|
| The radar is misaligned. | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed. | Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera. |
| The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display. | Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction. |
| Excessive heat around the camera. | Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases. |

Driver Alert

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

Driver Alert

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|--|
| Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested | Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels. |
| Front camera Low visibility Clean screen | The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly. |
| Driver fatigue warning Rest now | Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels. |

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.*

Speed Sign Recognition

WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit.

HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

Speed Sign Recognition

SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Traffic sign recognition**.
4. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog.**
5. Select **Activate speed warning**.
6. Switch **Overspeed chime** on or off.

SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Traffic signs**.
5. Switch **Speed warning** on or off.

SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Press **Speed Sign Recognition**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE- VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Traffic sign recognition**.
4. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog.**
5. Select **Activate speed warning**.
6. Select **Speed warning**.
7. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Speed Sign Recognition

SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Traffic signs**.
5. Select **Speed warning**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Sign Recognition**.
4. Press **Speed Warning**.
5. Press **Tolerance**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|--|
| Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual | The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Traffic Sign Recognition

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected traffic signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.

Traffic Sign Recognition

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they are grayed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Traffic sign recognition**.
4. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog.**
5. Select **Activate speed warning**.
6. Switch **Overspeed chime** on or off.

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Traffic signs**.
5. Switch **Speed warning** on or off.

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

Traffic Sign Recognition

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Select **Traffic sign recognition**.
4. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog.**
5. Select **Activate speed warning**.
6. Select **Speed warning**.
7. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.
4. Select **Traffic signs**.
5. Select **Speed warning**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/ SYNC 2.5

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
4. Press **Speed Warning**.
5. Press **Tolerance**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|--|
| Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual | The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Wrong Way Alert

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

Note: *The system is designed to detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.*

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.*

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Switch **Wrong Way Alert** on or off.

Wrong Way Alert

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Driver assistance**.

4. Switch **Wrong way alert** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Wrong Way Alert** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|-------------------------|--|
| Check driving direction | The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction. |

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

Load Carrying



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport or Track mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for roof racks. Never install a roof rack to your vehicle.

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack is 50 kg (110 lb).

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER

TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES

Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 332).

Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.

If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum number of allowed bikes is three, with a maximum allowed weight of 60 kg (130 lb).

Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

Luggage Compartment

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

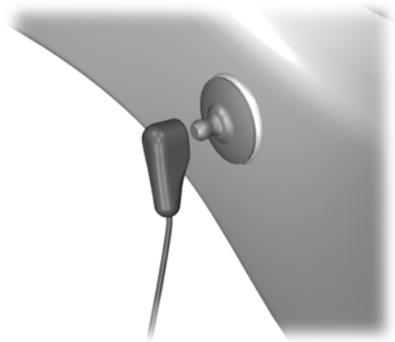
Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

Installing the Luggage Cover



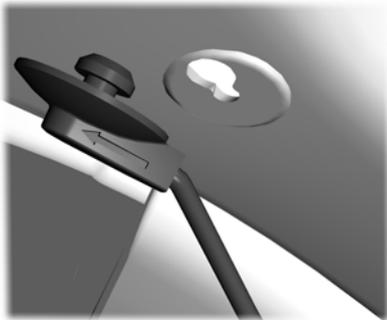
1. Place the luggage cover into the liftgate hooks.



2. Attach the retaining clips to the liftgate.

Note: Support the luggage cover when attaching the retaining clips.

Luggage Compartment



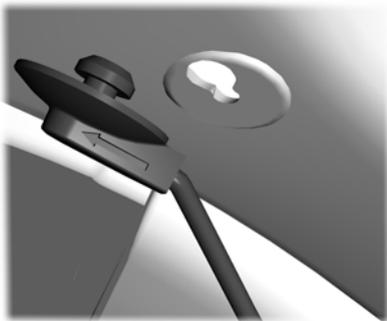
E266421

3. Attach the retaining clips to the luggage compartment trim panel.

Note: Support the luggage cover when attaching the retaining clips.

Removing the Luggage Cover

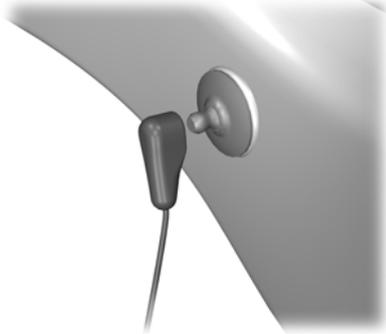
1. Open the liftgate.



E266421

2. Detach the retaining clips from the luggage compartment trim panel.

Note: Support the luggage cover when attaching the retaining clips.



3. Detach the retaining clips from the liftgate.

Note: Support the luggage cover when detaching the retaining clips.

4. Lift the luggage cover out of the liftgate hooks.

You can stow the luggage cover in the luggage compartment.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

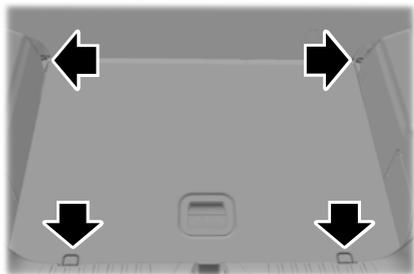
LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Luggage Compartment

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. Securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

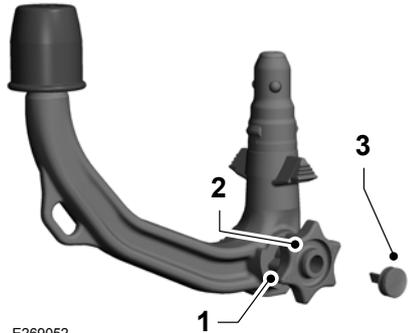
Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

Do not use any tools to detach or attach the tow ball arm.

Note: You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you attach the tow ball arm, check the following:

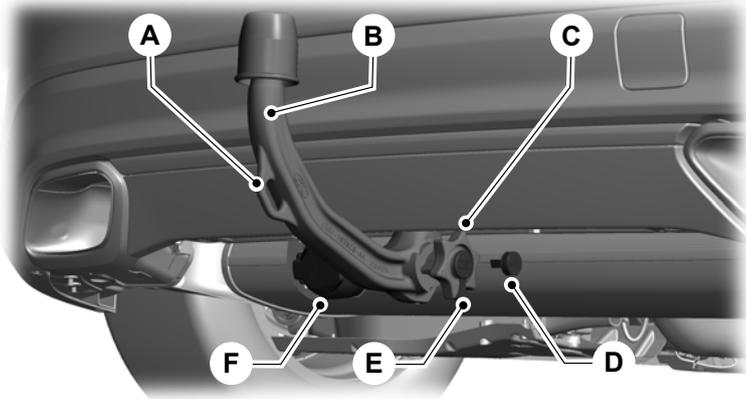


1. The green mark on the handwheel is within the green line on the tow ball arm.
2. You have locked the handwheel.
3. You have removed the key.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL COMPONENTS



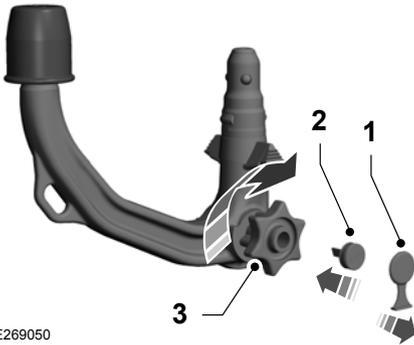
E269049

- A Trailer safety cable attachment point.
- B Tow ball arm in tow position.
- C Handwheel.
- D Key.
- E Protective cap.
- F Trailer wiring connection socket.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

Connecting a Trailer

DETACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

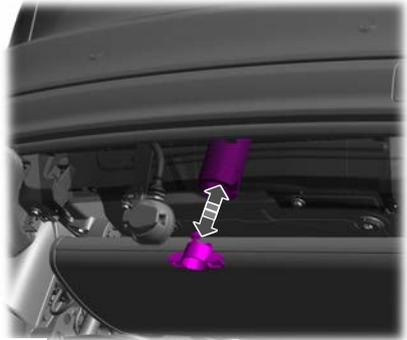


E269050

1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and turn it fully clockwise until it clicks.

Note: *The red mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.*

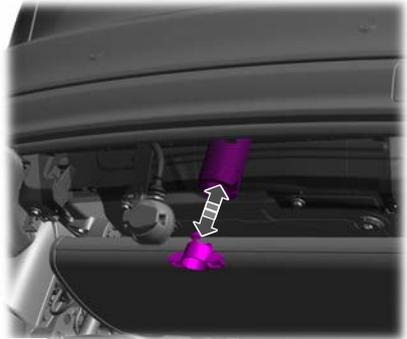
4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.



E265433

7. Insert the blanking plug.

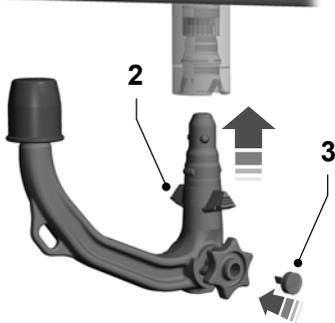
ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM



E265433

1. Remove the blanking plug.

Connecting a Trailer



E269051

2. Fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages. Do not hold the handwheel.

Note: *The green mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.*

3. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to lock the handwheel.
4. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.
5. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

Towing a Trailer

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 419).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 332).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

Towing a Trailer

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

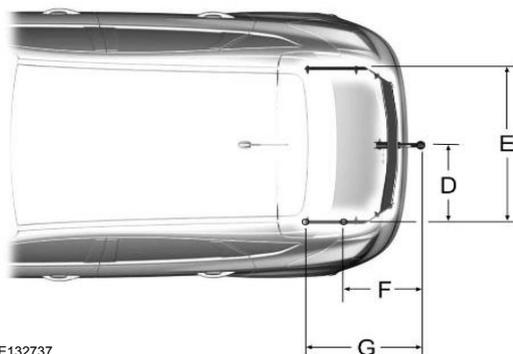
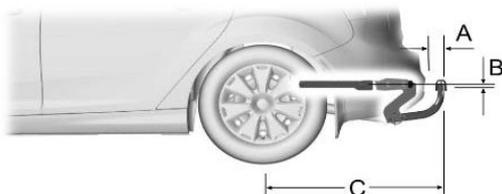
TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

| Engine | Transmission | kg (lb) |
|----------------|-------------------------|----------|
| 1.0L EcoBoost. | Manual Transmission. | 75 (165) |
| 1.0L EcoBoost. | Automatic Transmission. | 75 (165) |
| 1.5L EcoBoost. | Manual Transmission. | 75 (165) |
| 1.5L EcoBlue. | Manual Transmission. | 75 (165) |

Towing a Trailer

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS



E132737

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|------|--|-------------------|
| A | Bumper to center of tow ball. ¹ | 89 (3.5) |
| A | Bumper to center of tow ball. ² | 74 (2.9) |
| B | Attachment point to center of tow ball. | 34 (1.3) |
| C | Wheel center to center of tow ball. | 837 (33.0) |
| D | Center of tow ball to side member. | 525 (20.7) |
| E | Distance between side members. | 1,049 (41.3) |

Towing a Trailer

| Item | Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|-------------|--|--------------------------|
| F | Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point. | 355 (14.0) |
| G | Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point. | 703 (27.7) |

¹Excluding: ST Line.

²ST Line.

Driving Hints

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

BREAKING-IN

Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.

- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

Driving Hints



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

FLOOR MATS

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Driving Hints

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

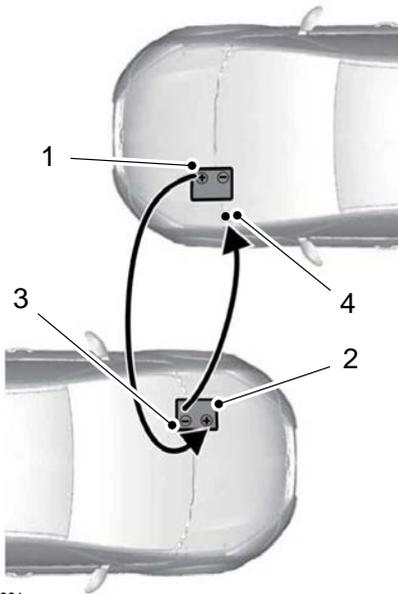
JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*

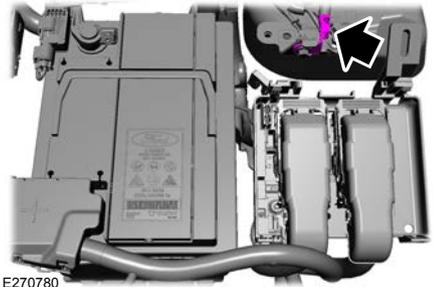
Crash and Breakdown Information



E142664

Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.

1. Connect the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, or connect the negative cable to a ground connection point if available.



E270780

5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and press the accelerator gently to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
7. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

Crash and Breakdown Information

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

POST IMPACT BRAKING

HOW DOES POST IMPACT BRAKING WORK

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

POST IMPACT BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Post impact braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (5 mph).

OVERRIDING POST IMPACT BRAKING

You can override post impact braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

POST IMPACT BRAKING INDICATORS



It flashes when a post impact braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

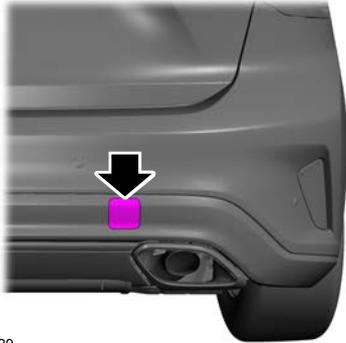
1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT

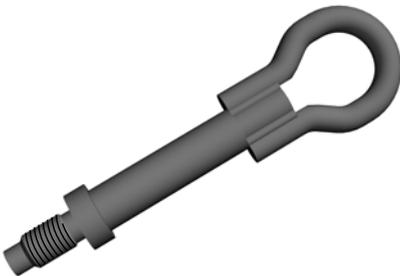


E265229

1. Gently press the top of the towing eye attachment point cover inward.
2. Gently lift it upward and then pull it straight out.

Note: The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye is in the left-hand side rear storage compartment.

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE

 **WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



E292787

1. Push the cover.
2. Carefully remove the cover.

Crash and Breakdown Information



E292904

3. Install the recovery hook.

Note: *It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED

WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

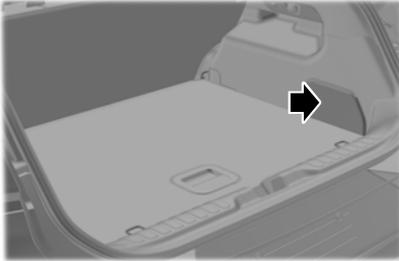
Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

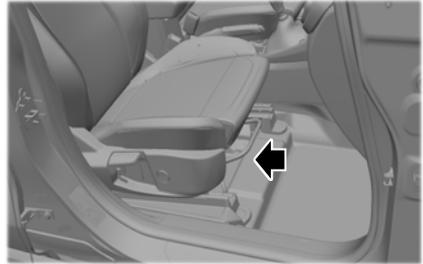
If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Emergency Equipment

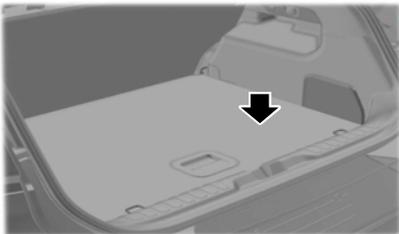
**STORING A FIRST AID KIT -
VEHICLES WITH: TEMPORARY
MOBILITY KIT, VEHICLES
WITHOUT: HIGH OUTPUT
AMPLIFIER AND SUBWOOFER**



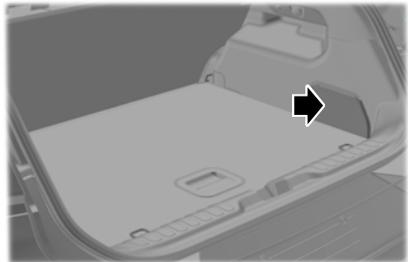
**STORING A FIRST AID KIT -
VEHICLES WITH: MINI SPARE
WHEEL**



**STORING A FIRST AID KIT -
VEHICLES WITH: TEMPORARY
MOBILITY KIT/HIGH OUTPUT
AMPLIFIER AND SUBWOOFER**

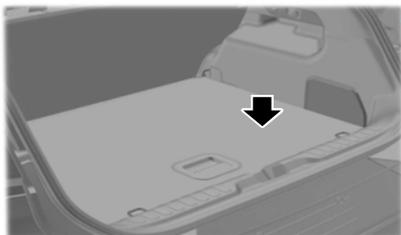


**STORING A WARNING
TRIANGLE - VEHICLES WITH:
TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT,
VEHICLES WITHOUT: HIGH
OUTPUT AMPLIFIER AND
SUBWOOFER**

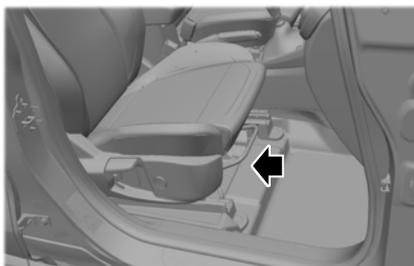


Emergency Equipment

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE - VEHICLES WITH: TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT/ HIGH OUTPUT AMPLIFIER AND SUBWOOFER



STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE - VEHICLES WITH: MINI SPARE WHEEL



Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

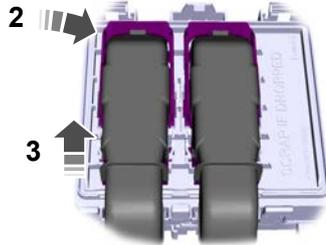


E255225

ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



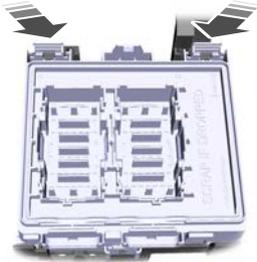
1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

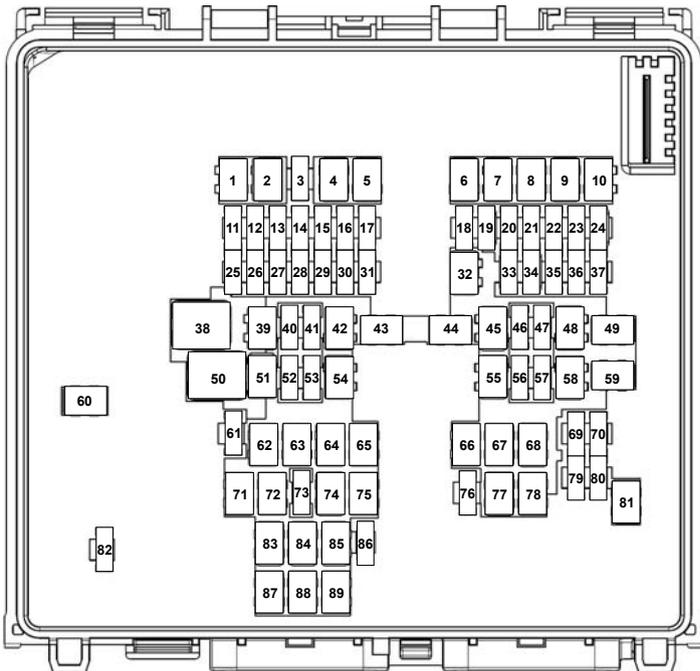
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

Fuses



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|------|-------------|---|
| 1 | - | Not used. |
| 2 | 60 A | Intake air heater. |
| 3 | 10 A | Windshield heated washer jets. |
| 4 | 40 A | Left-hand heated windshield element. |
| 5 | - | Not used. |
| 6 | 30 A | Starter motor. |
| 7 | 40 A | Intake air heater. |
| 8 | - | Not used. |
| 9 | 40 A | Dual-clutch transmission - Diesel. |
| | 60 A | Glow plug control module - Diesel. |
| 10 | - | Not used. |
| 11 | 20 A | Steering column lock. |
| 12 | 10 A | Air conditioning clutch. |
| 13 | - | Not used. |
| 14 | - | Not used. |
| 15 | - | Not used. |
| 16 | 5 A | Belt integrated starter generator - MHEV. |
| 17 | 5 A | Powertrain control module. |
| 18 | 10 A | Integrated heated steering wheel. |
| 19 | 5 A | Electronic power assist steering. |
| 20 | 7.5 A | Transmission control module. |
| 21 | - | Not used. |
| 22 | - | Not used. |
| 23 | 10 A | Passenger multi-contour seat module. |
| 24 | 10 A | Driver multi-contour seat module. |
| 25 | 10 A | Coolant pump. Exhaust valve. |

Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|------|-------------|--|
| 26 | 15 A | Evaporative emission canister purge valve. Camshaft position sensor. Fuel injection control pressure sensor. Turbocharger variable vane control solenoid. Exhaust gas recirculation cooler bypass valve. Wastegate control valve solenoid. Heated oxygen sensor. |
| 27 | 20 A | Powertrain control module. |
| 28 | 15 A | Active grille shutter. Oil pump. Air conditioning compressor. Wastegate control valve solenoid. Water-in-fuel sensor. |
| 29 | 15 A | Ignition coil. Noise suppression capacitor. |
| 30 | 10 A | Air conditioning pressure relief valve. |
| 31 | 10 A | Battery energy control module - MHEV. |
| 32 | 30 A | Body control module. |
| 33 | 10 A | Blind spot information system. Cruise control module. Front parking aid camera. Rear parking aid camera. Parking assist control module. |
| 34 | 10 A | Transmission control module. |
| | 5 A | Reductant dosage control module. |
| 35 | 10 A | Headlamps. |
| 36 | 5 A | Anti-lock brake system. |
| 37 | - | Not used. |
| 38 | 40 A | Blower motor. |
| 39 | - | Not used. |
| 40 | 10 A | Battery energy control module - MHEV. |
| 41 | 20 A | Heated seats. |
| 42 | - | Not used. |

Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|------|-------------|--|
| 43 | 40 A | Trailer tow module. |
| 44 | 40 A | Right-hand heated windshield element. |
| 45 | 30 A | Left-hand rear door module. |
| 46 | 5 A | Headlamp leveling. |
| 47 | 15 A | Audio unit amplifier. |
| 48 | 20 A | Moonroof. |
| 49 | 60 A | Anti-lock brake pump. |
| 50 | 60 A | High-speed cooling fan. |
| 51 | - | Not used. |
| 52 | 10 A | Data link connector. |
| 53 | - | Not used. |
| 54 | 30 A | Right-hand rear door module. |
| 55 | 30 A | Anti-lock brake valve. |
| 56 | 5 A | Brake on-off switch. |
| 57 | 15 A | Audio unit amplifier. |
| 58 | 30 A | Power liftgate. |
| 59 | 40 A | Body control module. |
| 60 | - | Not used. |
| 61 | 5 A | Lumbar support. |
| 62 | - | Not used. |
| 63 | - | Not used. |
| 64 | - | Not used. |
| 65 | - | Not used. |
| 66 | - | Not used. |
| 67 | - | Not used. |
| 68 | 20 A | Fuel pump. |
| 69 | 15 A | LPG (liquefied petroleum gas) injectors. |

Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|------|-------------|---|
| | | LPG safety valve. |
| 70 | - | Not used. |
| 71 | - | Not used. |
| 72 | - | Not used. |
| 73 | 5 A | Rain sensor. |
| 74 | 30 A | Windshield wiper motor. |
| 75 | - | Not used. |
| 76 | - | Not used. |
| 77 | 25 A | Heated rear window. |
| 78 | - | Not used. |
| 79 | 20 A | Horn. |
| 80 | - | Not used. |
| 81 | 25 A | Diesel fuel heater. |
| 82 | 15 A | Rear window washer pump. |
| 83 | 20 A | Cigar lighter. Front auxiliary power points. |
| 84 | 20 A | Rear auxiliary power points. |
| 85 | 40 A | Low-speed cooling fan. |
| 86 | 20 A | Rear window wiper. |
| 87 | - | Not used. |
| 88 | - | Not used. |
| 89 | - | Not used. |

Fuses

BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - LHD

The fuse box is behind the glove compartment.

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - RHD

The fuse box is below the glove compartment.

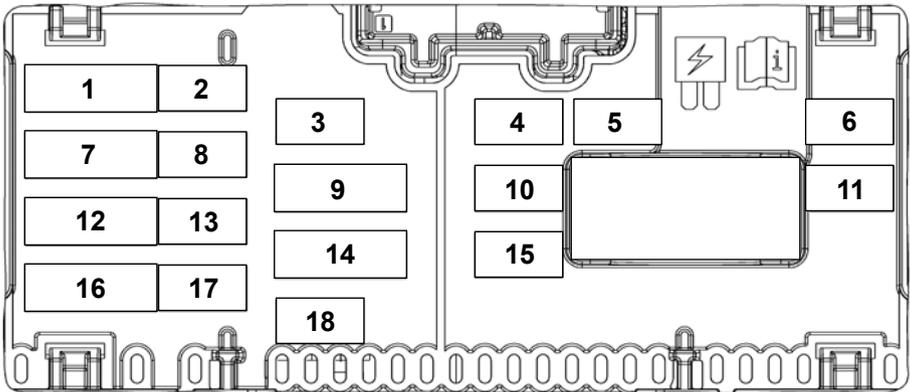
ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - LHD

1. Open the glove compartment and empty the contents.
2. Turn the retaining clips and remove them.
3. Press the sides inward and swivel the glove compartment downward.

ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - RHD

1. Carefully remove the cover below the glove compartment.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



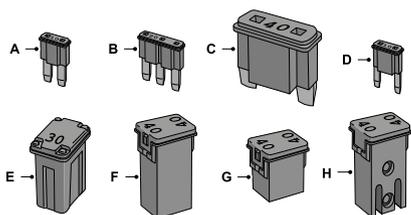
| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|------|-------------|---|
| 1 | 5 A | Restraints control module. In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor. |
| 2 | 10 A | Parking assist control module. |
| 3 | 10 A | Ignition switch. |

Fuses

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|------|-------------|---|
| | | Push button ignition switch. Telematics modem. |
| 4 | 20 A | Lock. Unlock. |
| 5 | 10 A | Moonroof. |
| 6 | 30 A | Right-hand front power windows. |
| 7 | 5 A | Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Auto-dimming interior mirror. |
| 8 | 10 A | Not used. |
| 9 | 5 A | Central security module. Hands-free liftgate. Power liftgate. |
| 10 | 15 A | Child safety locks. Fuel filler door. |
| 11 | 30 A | Left-hand front power windows. |
| 12 | 15 A | Heated steering wheel. Headlamp control module. |
| 13 | 15 A | Voice control. Compact disc player. |
| 14 | 7.5 A | Battery back-up sounder. Wireless charging module. |
| 15 | 10 A | Anti-theft alarm horn. |
| 16 | 7.5 A | Climate control. Steering wheel module. Instrument cluster. Data link connector. |
| 17 | 20 A | Audio unit. |
| 18 | 20 A | Not used. |

Fuses

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



| | |
|---|---------------------|
| A | Micro 2. |
| B | Micro 3. |
| C | Maxi. |
| D | Mini. |
| E | M Case. |
| F | J Case. |
| G | J Case Low Profile. |
| H | Slotted M Case. |

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

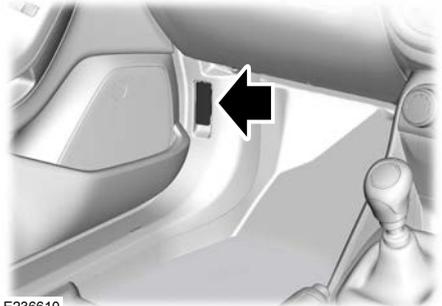
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 410).

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

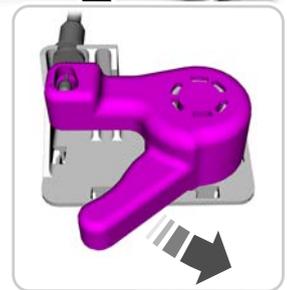
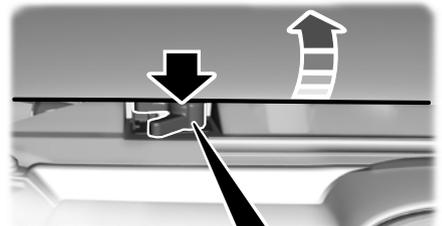
OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood



E236610

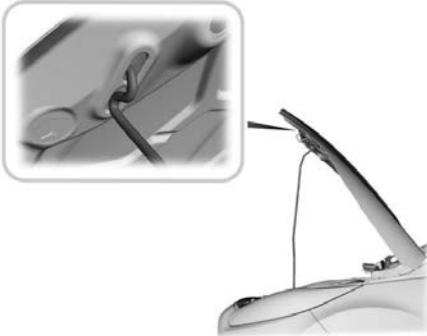
1. Pull the hood release lever.



E189028

2. Slightly lift the hood. Move the lever toward the center of your vehicle to release the hood.

Maintenance



3. Open the hood and support it with the hood strut.

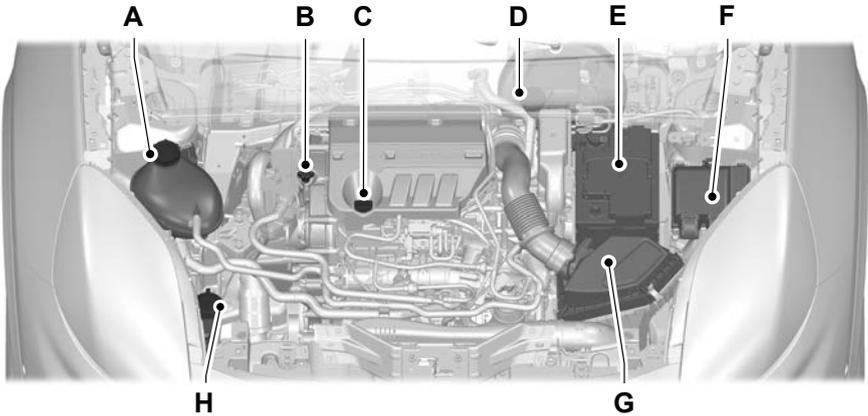
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

E87786

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, LHD

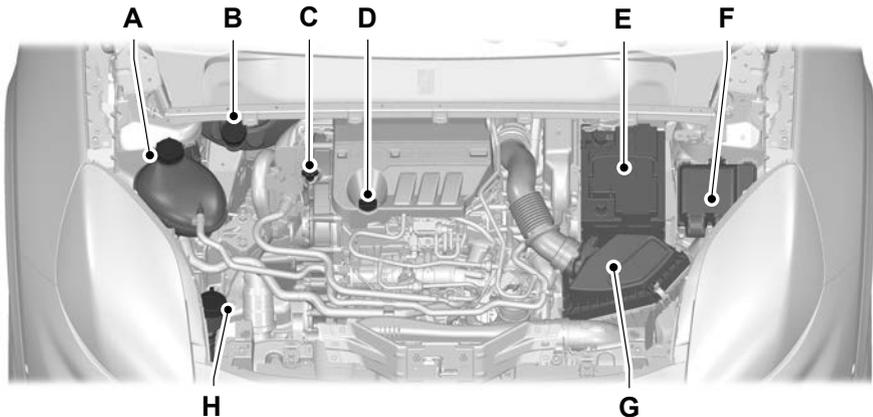


- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 366).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 364).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 224).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 371).

Maintenance

- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 348).
- G Air filter assembly.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washers** (page 94).

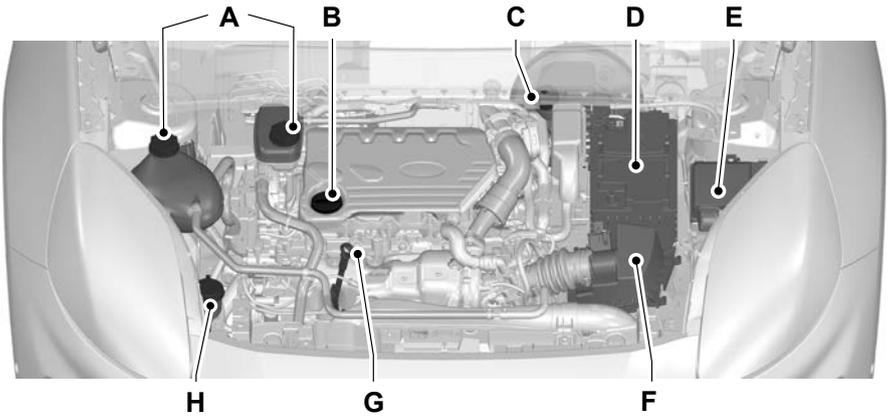
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, RHD



- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 366).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 224).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 364).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 371).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 348).
- G Air filter assembly.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washers** (page 94).

Maintenance

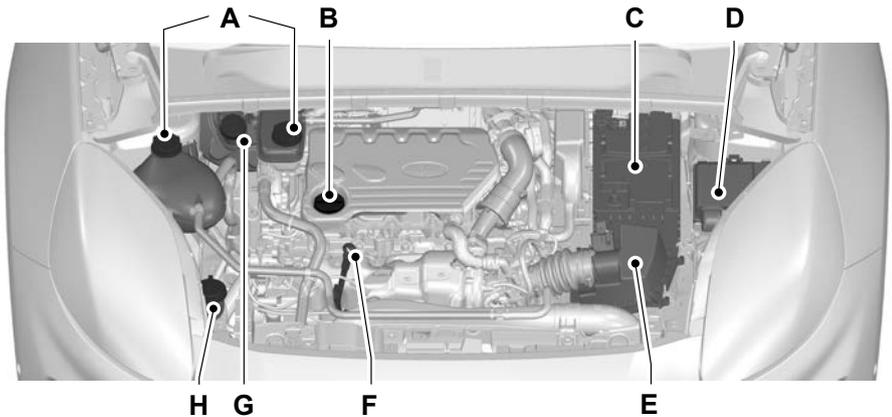
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBLUE, LHD



- A Engine coolant reservoirs. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 366).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 224).
- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 371).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 348).
- F Air filter assembly.
- G Engine oil filler dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 364).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washers** (page 94).

Maintenance

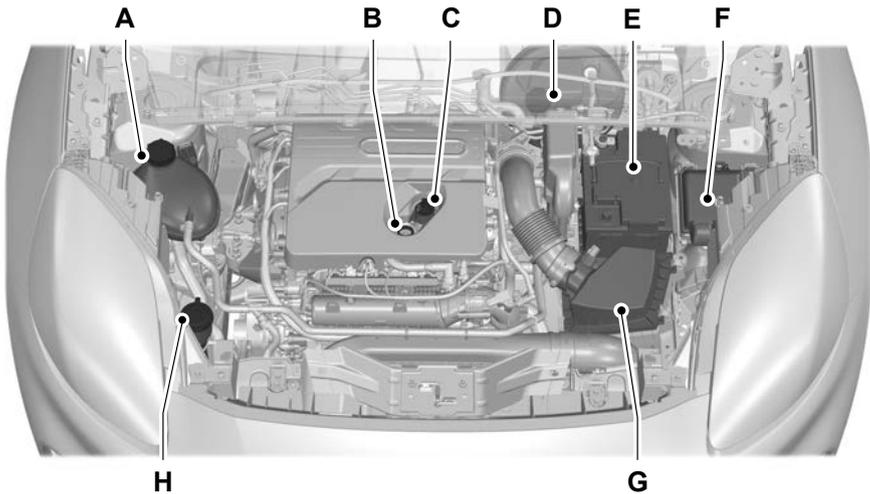
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBLUE, RHD



- A Engine coolant reservoirs. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 366).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).
- C Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 371).
- D Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 348).
- E Air filter assembly.
- F Engine oil filler dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 364).
- G Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 224).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washers** (page 94).

Maintenance

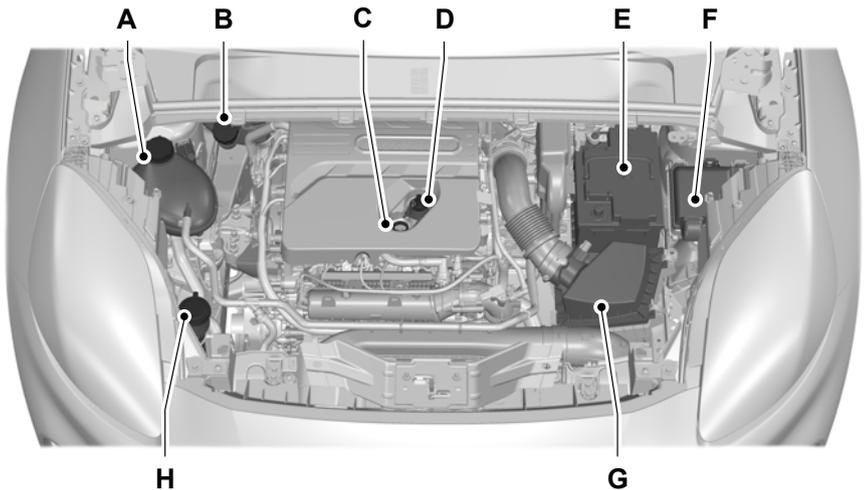
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™, LHD



- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 366).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 364).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 224).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 371).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 348).
- G Air filter assembly.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washers** (page 94).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™, RHD

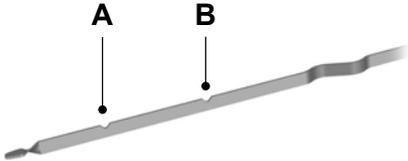


- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 366).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 224).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 364).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 371).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 348).
- G Air filter assembly.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washers** (page 94).

Maintenance

ENGINE OIL

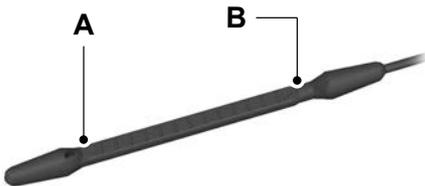
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

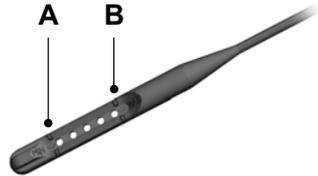
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBLUE



E140423

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E264320

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).*

Maintenance

Note: Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.

Note: If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 410).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Oil life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Oil life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

For filling information, please refer to the Capacities and Specifications section of your owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 410).

Maintenance

ENGINE COOLING FAN - GASOLINE



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 204).

COOLANT

COOLANT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Maintenance

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 410). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 410). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Maintenance

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 410).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

Maintenance

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 342).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description and Action |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| High engine temperature Stop safely | Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Checking the Coolant Level (page 366). |

Maintenance

12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

Maintenance

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 357).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.

Maintenance

5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 109).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Check Charging system | The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Charging system Service soon | The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Charging system Service now | The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked. |
| Battery state of charge low | The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 338). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery. |
| Turn power off to save battery | The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery. |
| Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual | Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal. |

Maintenance

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs do not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and do provide quality bulb illumination time.

| Bulb | Specification | Power (Watts) |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Front turn signal lamp. ¹ | PY21W. | 21 |
| Front turn signal lamp. ² | LED. | - |
| Daytime running lamp. | LED. | - |
| Headlamp low beam. | LED. | - |
| Headlamp high beam. ¹ | H1. | 55 |
| Headlamp high beam. ² | LED. | - |
| Front fog lamp. | LED. | - |
| Mirror turn signal lamp. | WY5W. | 5 |
| Rear lamp and stoplamp. | LED. | - |
| High mounted stoplamp. | LED. | - |
| Rear turn signal lamp. | PY21W. | 21 |
| Rear fog lamp. | P21W. | 21 |
| Reversing lamp. | W16W. | 16 |
| License plate lamp. | LED. | - |

¹ Projector Headlamp.

² Reflector Headlamp.

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

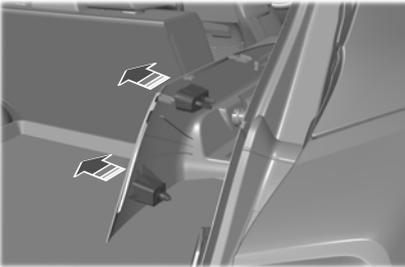
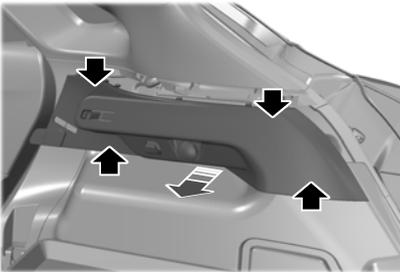
REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Stoplamp, Rear Lamp and Rear Turn Signal Lamp

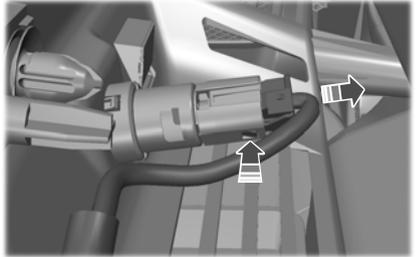
1. Fold the seat backrest forward. See **Rear Seats** (page 149).
2. Remove the package tray.



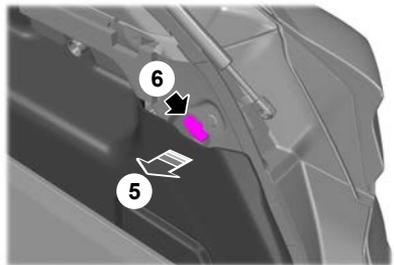
3. Firmly pull the package tray support panel at the four fixing points to unclip the package tray support panel.

Note: Use a screwdriver to gently lift the panel.

Note: You cannot fully remove the package tray support panel until you disconnect the 12V power outlet socket.



4. Disconnect the 12V power outlet socket by pressing the clip and fully remove the package tray support panel.



5. Pull the side soft trim panel to access the lamp release spring loaded fastener.
6. Turn the spring loaded fastener counterclockwise to release the lamp.

Note: You cannot fully remove the spring loaded fastener.

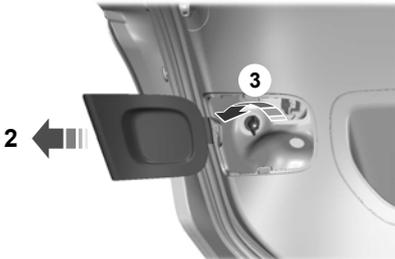
Maintenance



7. Remove the lamp.
8. Disconnect the electrical connector.
9. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

4. Remove the lamp.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Reversing Lamp



1. Open the liftgate.
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.

CHANGING A REAR FOG LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



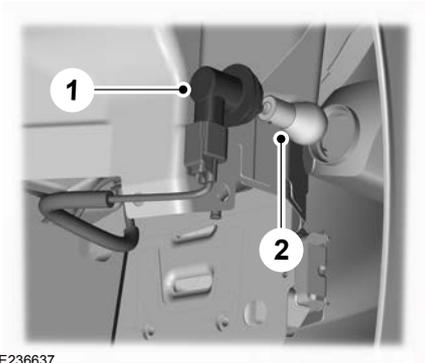
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 374).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Access the underside of your vehicle behind the rear wheel.

Maintenance



E236637

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A MIRROR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

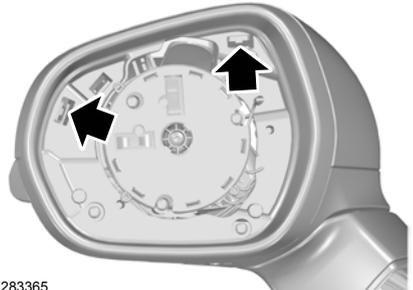
Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 374).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E283364

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully lever the mirror glass from the lower outer edge and remove it.
2. Unplug the connector from the rear side of the glass.



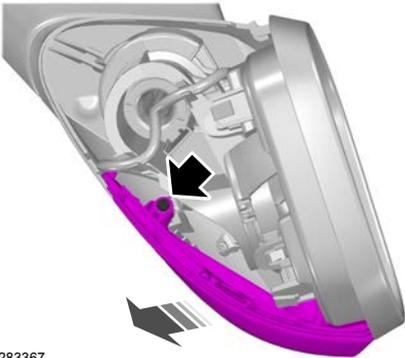
E283365

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully press the two housing cover clips and release them.

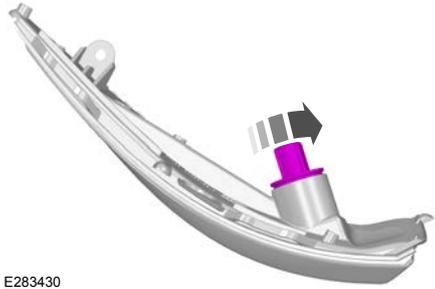
Maintenance



4. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to push the housing cover through the access hole and remove it.



5. Use a T10 Torx screwdriver to remove the lamp body.



6. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
7. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that both mirror housing cover clips lock into position.

CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

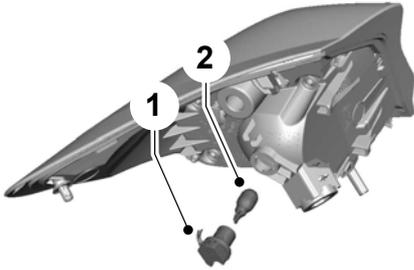
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 374).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 375).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

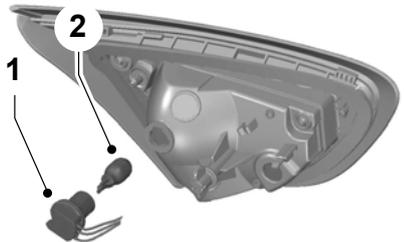


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 374).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 375).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

| Bulb | Specification | Power (Watts) |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Glove compartment lamp. | T-3. | 2.6 |
| Vanity mirror lamp. | T5. | 1.3 |

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

CHANGING THE ILLUMINATED SCUFF PLATE BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



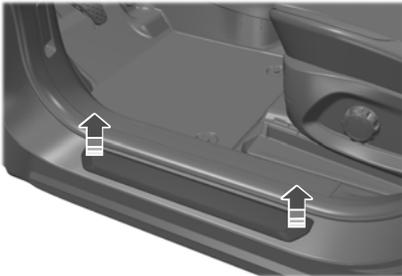
CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The scuff plate uses two coin-type three-volt lithium batteries CR2430.

1. Open the front door.



2. Carefully lift the edges of the scuff plate.

Note: By sticking adhesive tapes next to the edges of the scuff plate, you can mark its correct location for easier alignment during reinstall.



3. Remove the battery caps from the bottom of the scuff plate.



4. Remove the batteries.
5. Insert new batteries with the + facing upward.
6. Replace the battery caps.
7. Reinstall the scuff plate by pressing the edges.

TRACK USE PRECAUTIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, 7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before using your vehicle on a track, check the engine oil level. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).

Maintain the engine oil level at or near the maximum mark on the engine oil dipstick when using your vehicle on a track.

In manual (M) mode the transmission does not switch gear automatically when you reach the engine's speed limit. See **Manual (M)** (page 220).

Note: *This feature is intended for track use, use with caution.*

TRACK USE PRECAUTIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Before using your vehicle on a track, check the engine oil level. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 364).

Maintain the engine oil level at or near the maximum mark on the engine oil dipstick when using your vehicle on a track.

Launch Control - ST, Manual Transmission

WHAT IS LAUNCH CONTROL

Launch control is an electronic driving aid that helps to deliver a fast acceleration when you pull away from a standstill.

LAUNCH CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

Make sure that there are no pedestrians, objects or traffic in front of your vehicle.

LAUNCH CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Launch control does not operate when the transmission is in reverse or if the engine has not reached normal operating temperature.

SWITCHING LAUNCH CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Switch **Launch control** on or off.

Note: *The system remains on until you switch it off or you switch the ignition off.*

USING LAUNCH CONTROL

1. Bring your vehicle to a stop with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
2. Switch **Launch control** on. See **Switching Launch Control On and Off** (page 382).
3. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into first gear.
4. Fully press the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The system brings the engine to the optimum speed.*

5. Quickly and fully release the clutch pedal in a single movement.

LAUNCH CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates in the information bar when you switch the system on.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

Note: *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 30 cm (12 in) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 10,000 kPa (1,450 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 75°C (167°F).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Vehicle Care

Note: Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING MOONROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

Note: *The moonroof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.*

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

Wheel and Tire Information

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 389). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 391).

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 205/65R16.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).
- 215/55R17.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 7 mm (0.3 in).

Note: Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 389).

Note: The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.

Note: We recommend that you switch the stability control system off. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 236).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 389).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

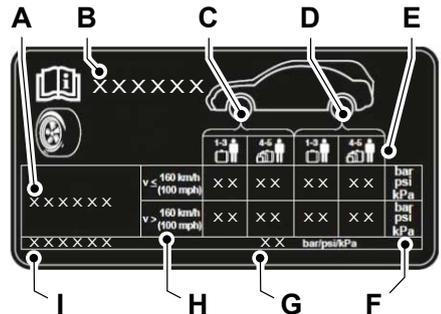
Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - EXCLUDING: ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.

Tire Care

F Measure unit.

H Intended constant vehicle speed.

G Spare wheel tire pressure.

I Spare wheel tire size.

| Tire Size | Normal Load | | Full Load | |
|-------------------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | Front | Rear | Front | Rear |
| | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 205/65R16 95H | 2.4 (35) | 2.1 (30) | 2.4 (35) | 2.6 (38) |
| 215/55R17 94V | 2.4 (35) | 2.1 (30) | 2.4 (35) | 2.6 (38) |
| 215/55R17 98W XL | 2.4 (35) | 2.1 (30) | 2.4 (35) | 2.6 (38) |
| 215/50R18 92V | 2.3 (33) | 2.1 (30) | 2.4 (35) | 2.6 (38) |
| 215/50R18 96V XL | 2.3 (33) | 2.1 (30) | 2.4 (35) | 2.6 (38) |
| 225/40R19 93V XL ¹ | 2.3 (33) | 2.1 (30) | 2.5 (36) | 2.6 (38) |
| 225/40R19 93V XL ² | 2.4 (35) | 2.1 (30) | 2.5 (36) | 2.6 (38) |

¹ Vehicles with gasoline engine and manual transmission.

² Vehicles with gasoline engine and automatic transmission and vehicles with diesel engine.

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

| Tire Size | bar (psi) |
|------------|-----------|
| T125/70R16 | 4.2 (61) |

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

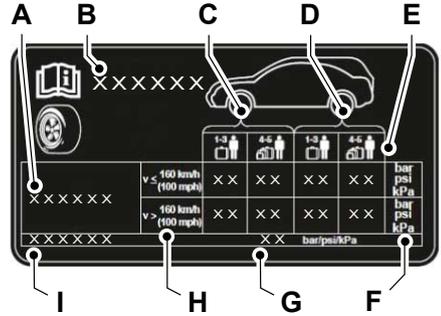
Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

| Tire Size | Normal Load | | Full Load | |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | Front | Rear | Front | Rear |
| | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 225/40 R19 93Y XL | 2.2 (32) | 1.8 (26) | 2.6 (38) | 2.4 (35) |
| 215/55 R17 98W | 2.4 (35) | 2.1 (30) | 2.4 (35) | 2.6 (38) |

Tire Care

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (62 mph)

| Tire Size | Normal Load | | Full Load | |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | Front | Rear | Front | Rear |
| | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) | bar (psi) |
| 225/40 R19 93Y XL | 2.6 (38) | 2.4 (35) | 2.6 (38) | 2.4 (35) |
| 215/55 R17 98W | 2.4 (35) | 2.1 (30) | 2.4 (35) | 2.6 (38) |

Tire Care

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismantled and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

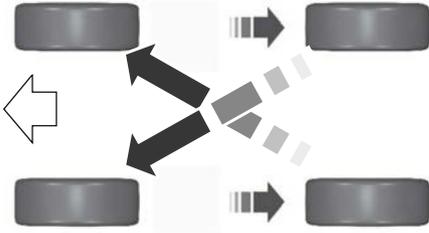
Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

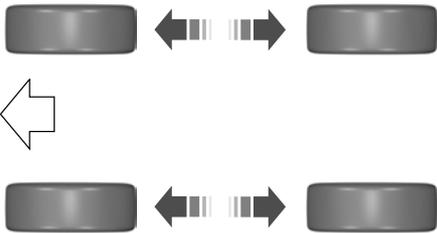
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Tire Care

Non-directional tires



Directional tires



E70415

Note: *Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.*

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

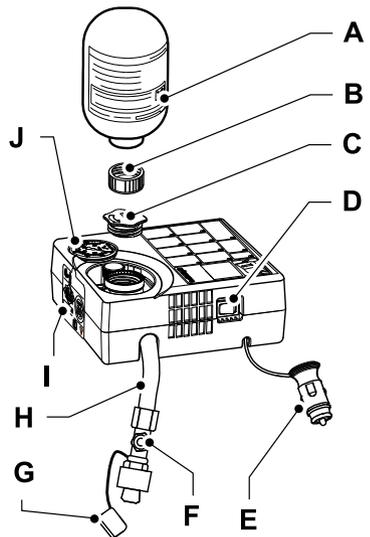
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is under the front right seat or in the luggage compartment.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



- A Sealant bottle.
- B Bottle cap.
- C Sealant bottle access cap.
- D Power switch.
- E 12 volt DC power point connector.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

- F Pressure release valve.
- G Protective cap.
- H Tire inflation pipe.
- I Warning Label.
- J Pressure gauge.

Note: Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

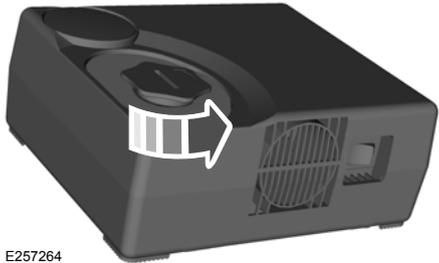
1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.



E257263

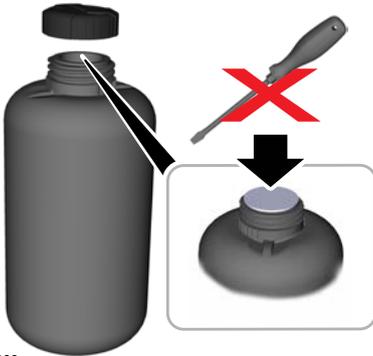
2. To temporarily repair a punctured tire, release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E257264

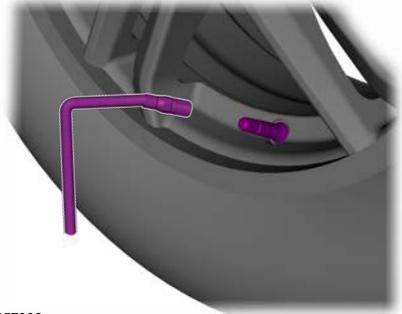
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



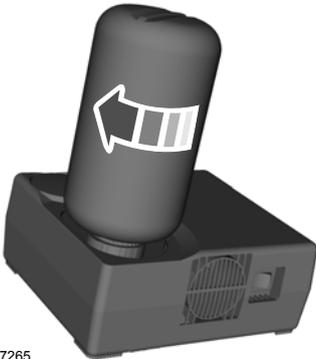
E256963

4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.



E257006

6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

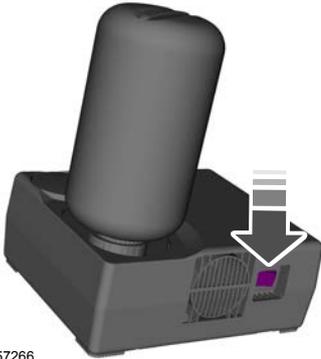
Note: Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.



E257022

7. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Power Outlet** (page 159).
8. Start the engine.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257266

WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

9. Switch the compressor on.



WARNING: Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

10. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi).

Note: If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

11. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off.

12. Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

13. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.

14. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257942

15. Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



16. After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 389). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 391).

Note: If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26.1 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

Note: If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (18.9 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

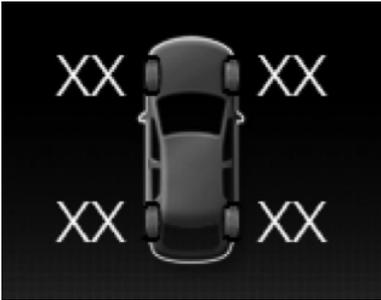


1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Note: *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Note: *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Select **Reset**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

| Warning Lamp | Possible Cause | Action |
|---|---|--|
| Solid warning lamp | One or more tires are significantly underinflated | Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See Tire Pressure Specifications (page 391). See Tire Pressure Specifications (page 389). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure. |
| Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp | Temporary spare wheel in use | Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system. |
| | Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction | If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Tyre pressure low | Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure. |
| Tyre pressure monitor malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Tyre pressure sensor malfunction | If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.

WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

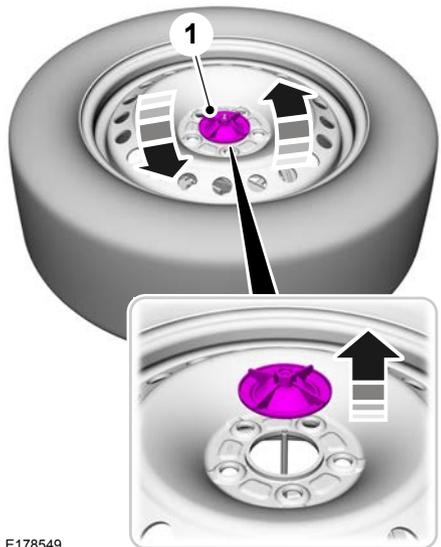
If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

Note: Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.

Note: The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.

Note: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.

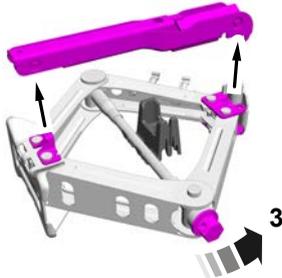
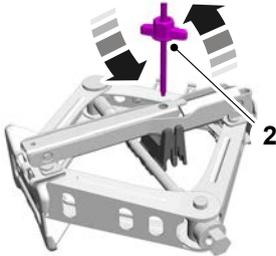
The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.



E178549

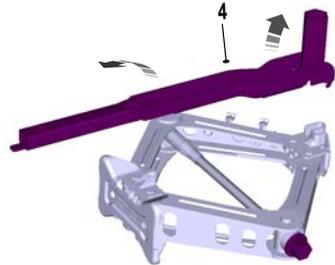
Changing a Road Wheel

1. Turn the spare wheel securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.



E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Turn the vehicle jack screw clockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool from the vehicle jack.



E245204

4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the lug nuts.

Note: Use the hook at the hexagonal end to remove the wheel trim.

Vehicle Jack

 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

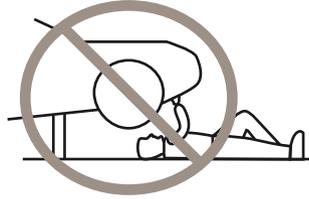
 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

Changing a Road Wheel

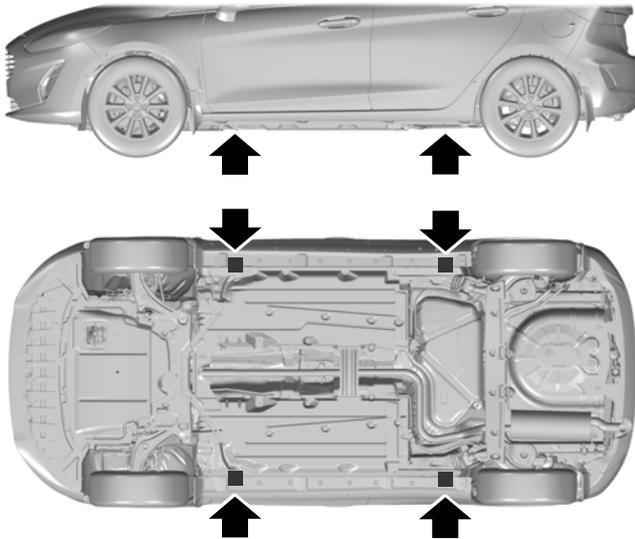
WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



Jacking and Lifting Points

WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

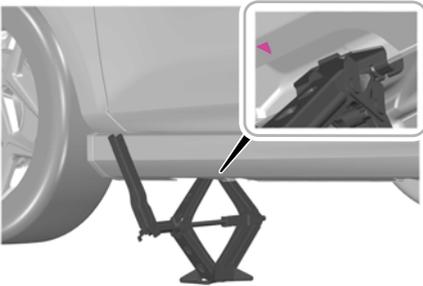


Changing a Road Wheel

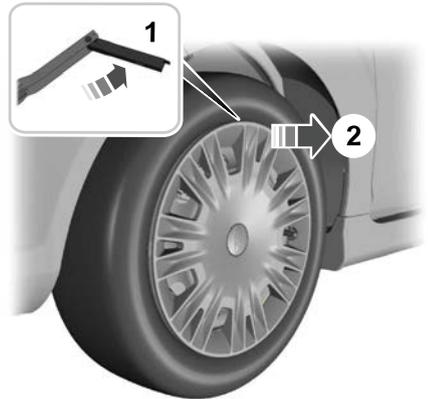


Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.

All Vehicles



Removing the Wheel Trim



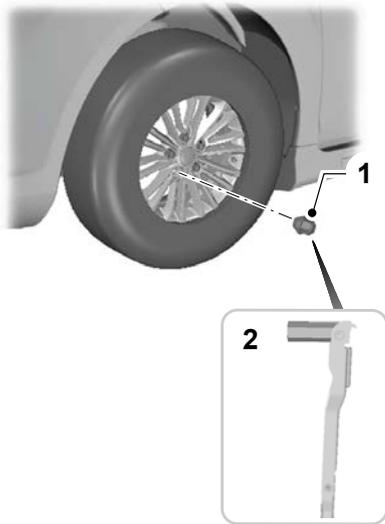
E285279

1. Unfold the lug nut wrench.
2. Use the tongue on the lug nut wrench to remove the wheel trim.

Removing a Road Wheel

1. Install the locking lug nut key.

Changing a Road Wheel



⚠ WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

2. Loosen the lug nuts.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

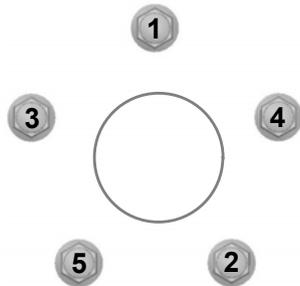
Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

Installing a Road Wheel

⚠ WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E75442

4. Install all of the lug nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.

Changing a Road Wheel

5. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
6. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 404).
7. Install the wheel trim.

WHEEL NUTS



WARNING: Only use the specific wheel nuts and wheels provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

| Nm (lb.ft) |
|-------------|
| 135 (100) |

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---------------------------|
| Overall length. | 4,186–4,226 (164.8–166.4) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 1,930 (76.0) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 1,533–1,556 (60.4–61.3) |
| Wheelbase. | 2,588 (101.9) |
| Front track. | 1,562–1,567 (61.5–61.7) |
| Rear track. | 1,518–1,523 (59.8–60.0) |

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

| Variant | Including the Oil Filter |
|---------|--------------------------|
| All. | 4.6 L (1.0 gal) |

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1 L (0.2 gal).

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|------------------------|---------------|
| Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20 | WSS-M2C948-B |

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Capacities

| Variant | Including the Oil Filter |
|---------|--------------------------|
| All. | 6.2 L (1.4 gal) |

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1.75 L (0.4 gal).

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|------------------------|---------------|
| Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20 | WSS-M2C952-A1 |

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C952-A1, you can top-up with a

SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

| Variant | Including the Oil Filter |
|---------|--------------------------|
| All. | 6.25 L (1.4 gal) |

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 0.9 L (0.2 gal).

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|------------------------|---------------|
| Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20 | WSS-M2C948-B |

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|-----------------|
| All. | 5.6 L (1.2 gal) |

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|--|---------------|
| Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx | WSS-M97B44-D |
| Antifreeze | WSS-M97B57-A2 |

WSS-M97B44-D is orange coolant.
WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. Yellow coolant may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

Note: *The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange or yellow coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.*

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| Larger engine coolant reservoir. | 7.3 L (1.6 gal) |
| Smaller engine coolant reservoir. | 2 L (0.4 gal) |

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|--|---------------|
| Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx | WSS-M97B44-D |
| Antifreeze | WSS-M97B57-A2 |

WSS-M97B44-D is orange coolant.
WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. Yellow coolant may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

Note: *The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange or yellow coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.*

Capacities and Specifications

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|---------------|
| All. | 6 L (1.3 gal) |

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|--|---------------|
| Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx | WSS-M97B44-D |
| Antifreeze | WSS-M97B57-A2 |

WSS-M97B44-D is orange coolant.
WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. Yellow coolant may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

Note: *The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange or yellow coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.*

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|------------------|
| All. | 42.2 L (9.3 gal) |

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|------------------|
| All. | 42.2 L (9.3 gal) |

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|------------------|
| All. | 45.2 L (9.9 gal) |

Capacities and Specifications

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|-------------------|
| All. | Fill as required. |

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|--|---------------|
| Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA | WSS-M14P19-A |

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---------|------------------|
| All. | 11.9 L (2.6 gal) |

Capacities and Specifications

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Materials

| Name | Specification |
|---|---------------|
| Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx | WSS-M6C65-A2 |

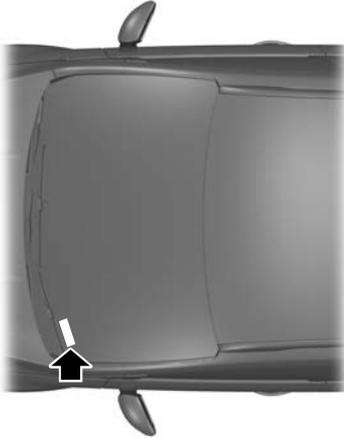
Note: We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

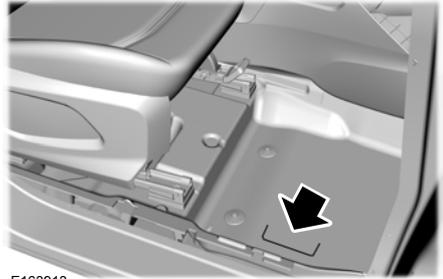
LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E163915

On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E163913

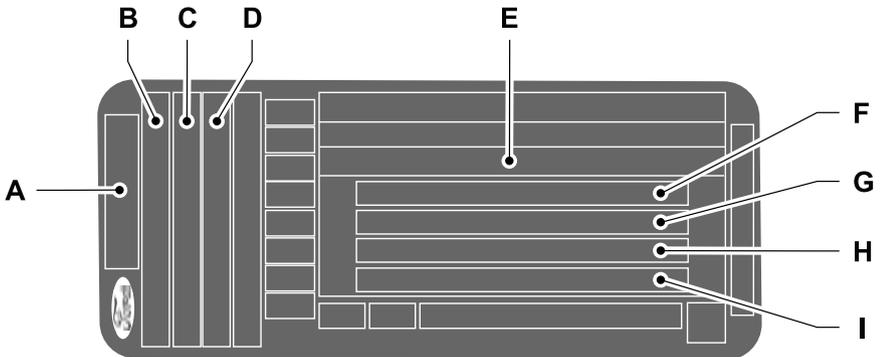
Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



Vehicle Identification

- A Model.
- B Variant.
- C Engine designation.
- D Engine power and emission level.
- E Vehicle identification number.
- F Gross vehicle weight.
- G Gross train weight.
- H Maximum front axle weight.
- I Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **FordPass Connect**.
3. Press **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View available networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Connected Vehicle

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

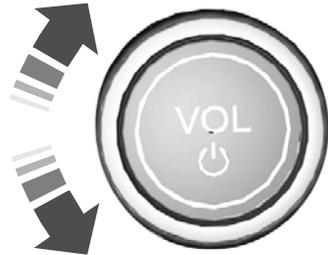


Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Note: Not all sources can be paused. The button mutes these sources.

Note: The mute button on the steering wheel pauses the media source.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Note: The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS



E248947

Use the rotary control or the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM



E248946

Use the rotary control or the touchscreen to select a menu item.

Returning to the Previous Screen



ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Set the time.

Note: The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

AM/FM RADIO

AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Audio System

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations



E248947

Use the rotary control or the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press the **OK** button to view available stations.

Note: Station list is only available for FM.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF



Press the button.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

Audio System

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations



E248947

Rotate the control to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press the **OK** button to view available stations.

GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

About SYNC

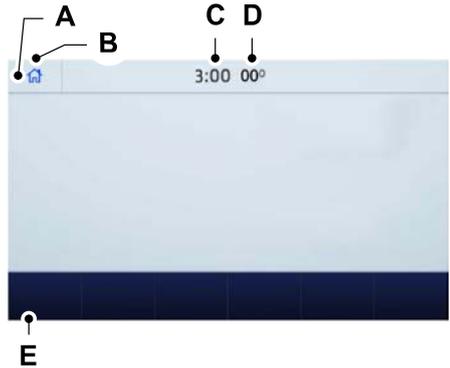
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

Note: You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

Note: You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

Using the Touchscreen



- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 448).
- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

Status Bar

-  Cell phone microphone muted.
-  Audio system muted.
-  Software update installed.
-  Wi-Fi connected.
-  Cell phone roaming.
-  Text message received.



Emergency Assistance off.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.



Traffic data source: Live traffic.



Traffic data source: Traffic broadcast.



Wireless charger active.

Feature Bar



Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a **Bluetooth®** device. See **Entertainment** (page 436).



Select to adjust climate settings. See **Climate** (page 438).



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 441).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 443).



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 447).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 448).

Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning Displays and Screens** (page 385).

Updating the System

Updating the System Using a USB Drive

Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

Note: *The website notifies you if an update is available.*

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

Note: *The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.*

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

Installing an Update

Note: *You can use the system when installation is in progress.*

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

Note: *Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.*

Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

Switching Automatic System Updates On

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Automatic updates**.
3. Switch **Automatic system updates** on.

SYNC™ 3

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Note: You can use the system when download is in progress.

Note: If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 421).

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

Note: Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

Note: Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

General

| Voice Command | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| ___ list of commands | Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. ¹ |
| Cancel | Cancel an active voice session. |
| ___ help | Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. ¹ |
| Back | Return to the previous screen. |
| Main menu | Go to the main menu. |

SYNC™ 3

| Voice Command | Description |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| Next page | Go to the next page. |
| Previous page | Go to the previous page. |

¹ Add the name of the feature to the command.

Entertainment

Audio Source

| Voice Command | Description |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Radio | Use the radio. |
| CD Player | Use the CD player. |
| Bluetooth audio | Use a Bluetooth ® device. |
| USB | Use a USB or media player. |

Radio

| Voice Command | Description |
|---------------|---|
| AM | Listen to AM radio. |
| ___ AM | Tune to a specific AM frequency. ¹ |
| DAB | Listen to DAB radio. |
| FM | Listen to FM radio. |
| ___ FM | Tune to a specific FM frequency. ¹ |

¹ Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

USB and Media Player

| Voice Command | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Play album ___ | Play your music by category. ¹ |
| Play artist ___ | |
| Play audiobook ___ | |
| Play genre ___ | |
| Play playlist ___ | |
| Play podcast ___ | |
| Play song ___ | |
| Browse all albums | Browse music on a USB device. |
| Browse all artists | |
| Browse all audiobooks | |
| Browse all genres | |
| Browse all playlists | |
| Browse all podcasts | |
| Browse all tracks | |
| Browse album ___ | Browse your music by category on a USB device. ¹ |
| Browse artist ___ | |
| Browse audiobook ___ | |
| Browse genre ___ | |
| Browse playlist ___ | |
| Browse podcast ___ | |

¹ Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

SYNC™ 3

Phone

| Voice Command | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Pair phone | Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth ®-enabled device. |
| Redial | Redial the last number that you dialed. |
| Dial ____ | Dial a number. ¹ |
| Call ____ | Call a specific contact from your phonebook. ² |
| Call ____ ____ | Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location. ³ |
| Listen to message | Listen to a text message. |
| Listen to message ____ | Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages. |
| Reply to message | Reply to the last text message. |

¹ Add the number you want to dial to the command.

² Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

³ Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

Navigation (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

| Voice Command | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Find an address | Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city. |
| Find a POI | Search for a point of interest by name or by category. |
| Find nearest ___ | Search for a nearby point of interest by category. ¹ |
| Find a POI category | Search for a point of interest category. ¹ |
| Destination home | Set your saved home address as your destination. |
| Destination work | Set your saved place of work as your destination. |
| Previous destinations | Display and select from a list of previous destinations. |
| Favourite destinations | Display and select from a list of favorite destinations. |

¹ Add a point of interest category or the name of a major brand or chain to the command.

Route Guidance

| Voice Command | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Cancel route | Cancel the current route. |
| Reroute | Select an alternate route. |
| Repeat last instruction | Repeat the last guidance prompt. |
| Show route | Display an overview of the route. |
| Show map | Display the map on the touchscreen. |
| Show north up | Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen. |
| Show heading up | Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen. |
| Show 3D | Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front. |

Apps

General

| Voice Command | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Mobile apps | Start an app. The system prompts your for the app name. |
| List apps | Get a list of apps running on your device. |
| Find apps | Search and connect to apps running on your device. |

Active App

| Voice Command | Description |
|---------------|---|
| ___ help | Get a list of voice commands for a specific app. ¹ |
| Close ___ | Close an app. ¹ |

¹Add an app name to the command.

Voice Settings

| Voice Command | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Voice settings | Go to the voice settings menu. |
| Interaction mode standard | Switch long voice prompts on. |
| Interaction mode advanced | Switch short voice prompts on. |
| Call confirmation on | Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call. |
| Call confirmation off | Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call. |
| Voice command lists on | Switch the display of voice commands on. |
| Voice command lists off | Switch the display of voice commands off. |

Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

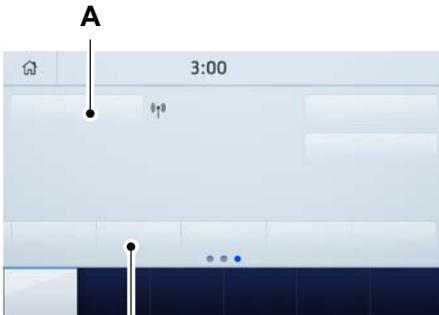
Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.

ENTERTAINMENT



Select the audio option on the feature bar.



A

B

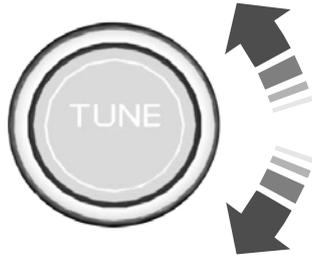
- A Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Using the Radio

Setting an AM/FM Radio Station

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **AM** or **FM**.



3. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

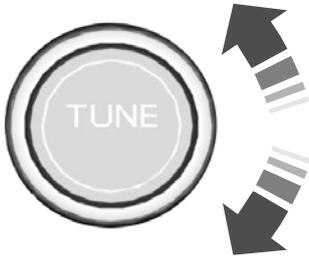
Selecting a FM Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **FM**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

Selecting a Digital Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **DAB**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select an ensemble.
5. Select a radio station from the list.

Manually Changing Digital Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the station.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

Note: You can add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select **Traffic (TA)**.

Note: If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

Streaming Music From a Bluetooth® Device.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 441).

Select **Sources**.



Select Bluetooth.

Searching for Tracks on Bluetooth® Device.

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

Note: Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

Playing Tracks on Bluetooth® Device in a Random Order.



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Repeating Tracks on Bluetooth® Device.



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format **Bluetooth®** Device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a **Bluetooth®** Device.

Note: A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.

Select **Sources**.



Select USB.

Note: *The system indexes your music before you can play it.*

Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

Note: *Select the cover art to view information about the current track.*

Note: *You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.*

Playing Tracks on a USB or Media Player in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: *You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a USB or media player.*

Note: *A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.*

Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access the climate control features.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 448).*

Accessing the Climate Control Menu



Touch the button to access additional controls for the front climate system.

Directing the Airflow



Touch the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air that circulates in your vehicle.

Setting the Temperature

Touch up or down on the left-hand temperature control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: *This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.*

Touch up or down on the right-hand temperature control to set the right-hand temperature.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

MAX A/C: Touch the button to activate and maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

A/C: Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: *In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.*

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off



Touch the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Touch the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Touch the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Touch the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: Depending on your region, air conditioning turns on.

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with **A/C**, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

Accessing Rear Climate Controls



Touch the button to access additional controls for the rear climate system.

Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator



Touch the button.

When on, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on rear automatic operation, then set the temperature.

Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

PHONE



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We

recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch **Bluetooth®** on.

Make sure your cell phone is discoverable. See your cell phone's user manual.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Pair phone**.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

Using Your Cell Phone

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

SYNC™ 3

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Your phone

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another cell phone.

Change device

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Text messages

Display the cell phone messages.

Siri

Connect to Siri on your iOS device.

Using Text Messaging

| Menu Item | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Hear it | Hear the text message. |
| View | View the text message. |
| Call | Call the sender. |
| Reply | Reply to the text message with a standard text message. |

Apple CarPlay

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Phone Voice Assistant

Connect to the phone voice service on your Android device.

Text Messaging

Setting Text Message Notification

iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

Note: *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.*

Switching Apple CarPlay Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.

3. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

Android Auto

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Switching Android Auto Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Switch **Android Auto** off.

NAVIGATION

Note: For more information, refer to the local Ford website.



Select the navigation option on the feature bar.

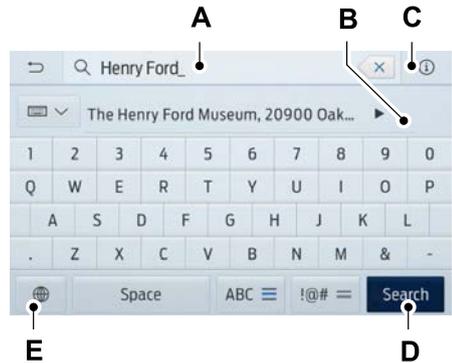


- A Map view menu.
- B Zoom out.

- C Zoom in.
- D Route guidance menu.
- E Destination entry menu.

Setting a Destination

Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



- A Text entry field.
- B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.
- C Information icon.
- D Search.
- E Keyboard settings.

Note: Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

Note: You can enter a destination in a number of formats, **city street number, city number street**, zip code or point of interest.

Note: You do not have to enter the destination country.

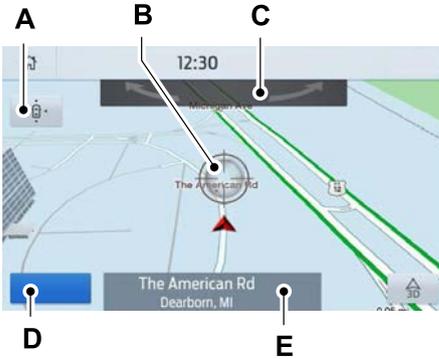
Note: To enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example **ä** or **é**, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.

SYNC™ 3

Select **Search**.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

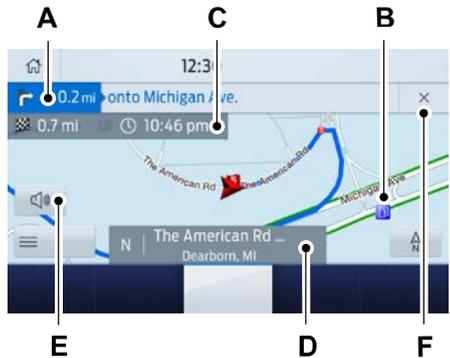
- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

Note: You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

Route Guidance



- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last guidance prompt.
- B Point of interest.
- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

Note: To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

Route Guidance Menu

| Menu Item | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Screen view | Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active. |
| Full map | View a full screen map when route guidance is active. |
| Motorway exit info | View exit information for your current route. |
| Turn list | View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it. |
| Traffic list | View traffic nearby or on your current route. ¹ |
| Navigation settings | Adjust navigation settings. |
| Where am I? | View information about your current location. |
| Cancel route | Cancel route guidance. |
| Show route | View the entire current route on the map. |
| Re-route | View an alternative route compared to your current one. |
| Edit waypoints | Change the order or remove waypoints. |
| Optimise order | The system determines the order of waypoints for you. |
| Start | Go to the next screen and start the new route. |
| Search | Enter a destination address. |
| Home | Set your saved home address as your destination |
| Work | Set your saved place of work as your destination. |
| Favourites | Display and select from a list of favorite destinations. |
| Previous destinations | Display and select from a list of previous destinations. |
| POI | Display the point of interest categories. |

¹ Reliant upon traffic message channel or live traffic.

Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

Note: The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.

Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set a destination.
3. Select the flag icon.
4. Select **Start**.

Canceling Route Guidance

Canceling Route Guidance From the Route Guidance Menu



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select **Cancel route**.

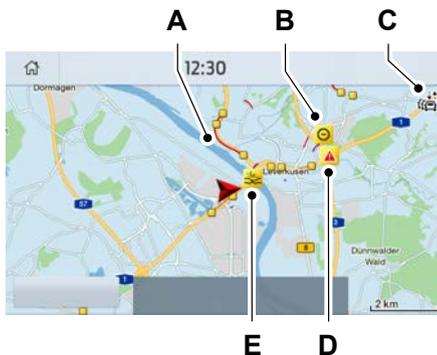
Canceling Route Guidance From the Main Map



Select the icon in the upper right-hand corner of the main map to cancel route guidance.

Live Traffic (If Equipped)

Live traffic provides near real-time traffic information to help you plan the fastest route to your destination. You must have an active subscription for Live Traffic.



- A Traffic congestion.
- B Road closure.
- C Live traffic active.
- D Urgent warning.
- E Traffic incident.

Switching Live Traffic On

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network** (page 421).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.

Navigation Map Updates

Please check the local Ford website or contact your dealership for navigation map updates.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you can report them directly to HERE by visiting www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

APPS

The system allows you to interact with select mobile apps while keeping your eyes on the road. Voice commands, steering wheel buttons, or a quick tap on your touchscreen give you advanced control of compatible mobile apps. You can also stream your favorite music or podcasts, share your time of arrival with friends, and keep connected safely.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Note: For more information about available apps, visit the local Ford website.

Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 441).

2. Connect your iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using **Bluetooth®**.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select Disable.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 441).
2. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 441).
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find mobile apps**.

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Mobile apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when mobile apps are enabled.

Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 441).
3. Switch on Enable Mobile Apps via USB in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

SETTINGS



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select a tile to access the settings.



Select the option to display extra information.

Ambient Lighting

You can adjust the ambient lighting settings.

Android Auto

You can switch Android Auto on and off.

Apple CarPlay

You can switch Apple CarPlay on and off.

Audio

You can adjust the audio settings.

Automatic Updates

You can switch automatic updates on and off and adjust the settings.

Bluetooth®

You can switch Bluetooth on and off and pair your cell phone.

Clock

You can adjust the clock settings.

Display

You can adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

You can switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

FordPass (If Equipped)

You can adjust the FordPass settings.

General

You can adjust settings like language, measurement units, or reset the system.

Mobile Apps

You can adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

Phone

You can connect and disconnect your device, or manage the connected device settings.

Seats (If Equipped)

You can adjust the position and the massage function of the seats.

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

SYNC™ 3

Valet Mode (If Equipped)

You can enable and disable the valet mode.

Vehicle (If Equipped)

You can adjust the camera settings.

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings.

Wi-Fi

You can switch Wi-Fi on and off and adjust the settings.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Voice Recognition

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|---|---|
| The system does not understand what I am saying. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – You are using the wrong voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See Using Voice Recognition (page 430). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are speaking too soon. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wait for the voice prompt before you speak. |
| The system does not understand the name of a track or artist. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Bluetooth® does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks. – You are using the wrong voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See Using Voice Recognition (page 430). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rename the files on your device or use the touch-screen to select and play the track. |

SYNC™ 3

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|---|---|
| The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact. |
| The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it. |
| The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice. |

USB and Bluetooth® Audio

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|-----------------------------|---|
| I cannot connect my device. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again. – Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port. – Incompatible cable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device. |

SYNC™ 3

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|---|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incorrect device settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings. • Check that your device is not set only to charge. – Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock your device before connecting it. |
| The system does not recognize my device. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions. |
| The system does not understand the name of a track or artist. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Bluetooth® does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks. |
| I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth ® device. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website. – Device not connected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pair your device. See Phone (page 441). – Media player not running. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start the media player on your device. |
| The system does not recognize the music on my device. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair the files on your device. – Corrupt files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair the files on your device. – Copyright protected files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected. – Unsupported file format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See Entertainment (page 436). |

SYNC™ 3

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|---|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device indexing required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Re-index your device. See Settings (page 448). – Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock your device before connecting it. |
| Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again. |
| When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn the volume down on your device |
| The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order. | <p>If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory. – If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected. |

Phone

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|--|---|
| During a call, I can hear excessive background noise. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. |
| During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. – Cell phone microphone muted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unmute your cell phone microphone. |
| During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – System restart required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again. |
| I cannot download phonebook. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. – Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 448). – Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. |
| A message displays suggesting that my phonebook has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. • Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory. – Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 448). |

SYNC™ 3

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|---------------------------------|--|
| I cannot connect my cell phone. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. • Install the latest cell phone firmware. • Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again. • Switch automatic phonebook download off. See Settings (page 448). |
| Text messaging does not work. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. |
| I cannot hear text messages. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. |

Navigation (if Equipped)

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|--|--|
| I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incorrect entry method. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the street name with the country. |
| The system does not recognize coordinates. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – You are using the wrong coordinates format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the format ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West. |

Apps

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|--|--|
| The system cannot find any apps. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your Android or iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth®. |
| I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Download and install the latest version of the app. – AppLink compatible apps not running on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required. – Incorrect app settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required. |
| I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Apps failed to fully close. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Restart the apps and try again. • If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device. • If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it. |
| I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch Bluetooth® off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device. |

SYNC™ 3

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|--|---|
| I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Cable connection issue.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device. |
| I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Device volume is low.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Turn the volume up on your device. |
| I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth® ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth® ports, the system cannot find all of them.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use. |

Wi-Fi Connectivity

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|--|--|
| I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Password error. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the correct network password. – Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address. |
| The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. |
| I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Obstructed network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door. |

SYNC™ 3

| Symptom | Possible Cause and Resolution |
|---|--|
| I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Hidden network.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Make the network visible and try again. |
| Software downloads take too long. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– Weak network signal<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot. |
| The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">– No software update available.– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider. |

Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

Note: *You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.*

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

Customer Information

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit [http://
corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html](http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html).

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

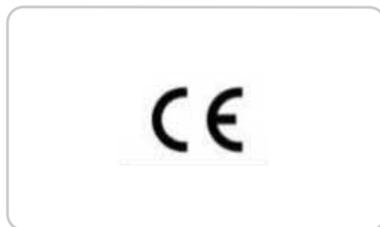
To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit [https://corporate.ford.com/operations/
locations/global-links.html](https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html).

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

ANTENNAS

European Union EU



Ukraine



Customer Information

United Kingdom



**BLIND SPOT INFORMATION
SYSTEM SENSORS**

Argentina



Belarus



Brazil



Canada

Short Range Radar Sensor SRR3-B
IC ID: 4135A-SRR3B

Customer Information

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure information:

This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and the body of any persons, user or bystander.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 8 in (20 cm) de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 240/MCPT/SG/16
Date d'agrément : 23/05/2016

European Union EU

CE

Customer Information

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: 3R8-8M-7DF-231

Malaysia



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוג מסדר התקשורת 51-63484
2. תח א'סור לכצע פעולות בככשיר שיש בתן כ'די לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של הכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או תוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור מסדר התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

RALM/24A/0715/S(15-2272)

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0727/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 10/12/2019

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA - SRR3-B.

Mexico

IFETEL: RLVCSR15-0904

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

- (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
- (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Customer Information

Moldova



Russia



Serbia



И011 18

Pakistan



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Paraguay



Customer Information

South Africa

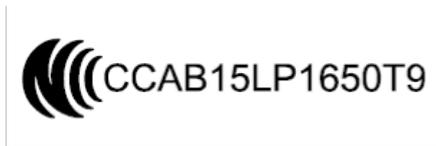


South Korea



MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3B

Taiwan, China



警語

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Customer Information

Ukraine



справжнім fIDC. Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH заявляє, що тип радіообладнання SRR3 - В відповідає технічному регламенту радіообладнання ;

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою :

<http://continental.automotive-approvals.com/>

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER62934

DEALER No:
DA40068

United Kingdom



United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION TO USERS

Customer Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam



Zambia



BODY CONTROL MODULE

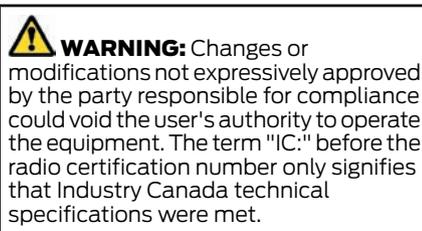
Argentina



Brazil



Canada and United States of America



FCC ID: LXPP004

IC: 2298A-P004

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X4D

European Union EU



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA – P004R.

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-113

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA – P004.

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – P005

Customer Information

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0801/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0768/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 11/03/2020

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24200 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 27/05/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 23513 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 24/03/2020

Moldova



Paraguay



2020-07-I-0405
2021-01-0037

Customer Information

Serbia



U011 20

South Korea



R-R-175-P005

Taiwan, China

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461



South Africa



Customer Information

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER81344/20
DEALER NO: DA88113/20



TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER80748/20
DEALER NO: DA83047/19

Ukraine



TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER81343/20
DEALER NO: DA88113/20

United Kingdom



Customer Information

Zambia



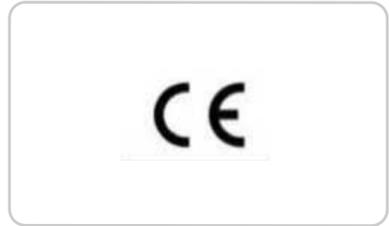
Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 594/dpt/2017

Date d'agrément : 09/04/2017

European Union EU



CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Argentina



Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: OR2-9H-7E1-x4D

Brazil



Customer Information

Indonesia

SERTIFIKAT NOMOR : 53104/SDPPI/2017
PLG ID: 4927



RALM/61A/0318/S(18-0852)

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément: 0409/ARE/2017

Date d'agrément: 12/04/2017

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוג מסדר התקשרות: 51-63483
2. תל אישור לבצע פעולות במסגרת שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלמנטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנו, החלפת אנטנה סקרית או חוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור מסדר התקשרות, כשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

Moldova



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA - L2C0065TR.

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 13639 ARNT 2017

Date d'agrément: 28/03/2017

Malaysia



Customer Information

Pakistan



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA105753

Paraguay



South Africa



Serbia



South Korea



R-CMM-DLH-L2C0065TR

Customer Information

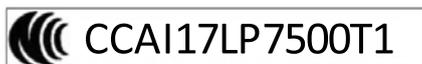
Syria

SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
FR00085-17

United Arab Emirates



Taiwan, China



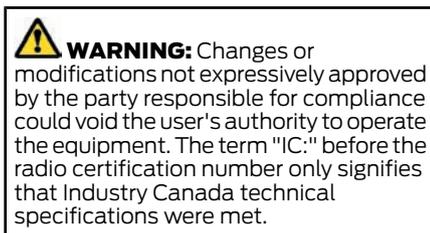
United Kingdom



Ukraine



United States and Canada



FCC ID: L2C0065TR

IC: 3432A-0065TR

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

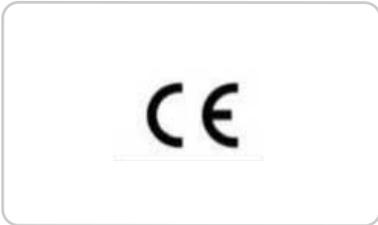
Zambia



KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

| Device | Type Designation |
|-------------|------------------|
| Flip Key | A08TBB |
| Passive Key | A2C17105200 |

European Union EU



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-81657
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את הכוונתו האלחוטית של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, ככל שהשם למופיעת אלחוטית.

Moldova



Customer Information

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR8923 ANRT 2014

Date d'agrément: 04/02/2014



Serbia



Ukraine



South Africa



United Kingdom



Customer Information

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Europe

Argentina



Ghana

Brazil



Customer Information

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-63481
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תדמית, החלפת אנטנה פנימית או תוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, כלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות.

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 14721 ANRT 2017
Date d'agrément : 12/09/2017

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA - OUC26006559.

Paraguay



Moldova



NR: 2018-04-I-000175

Serbia



1005 21

Customer Information

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

N0650-18

Taiwan



South Africa



Ukraine



South Korea



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER95949/21
DEALER No: DA37380/15

MSIP- R-RMM-OAC-OUC26006559

Customer Information

United States of America and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: OUC26006559

IC: 850K-26006559

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia



RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

Argentina



Brazil



Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéros d'agrément : 033/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéros d'agrément : 034/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-108

Customer Information

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-114

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24102 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 18/05/2020

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0803/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément: 03/06/2020

Pakistan



AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0802/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

South Africa



Customer Information

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER81341/20

DEALER No:
DA88113/20

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER81342/20

DEALER No:
DA88113/20



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2C0082R

FCC ID: L2C0083TR

FCC ID: L2C0086R

IC: 342A-0083TR

IC: CAN RSS-Gen/CNR-Gen

SYNC

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-20317

Customer Information

Brazil



European Union EU



China



Ghana



Djibouti



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA - FG-185-SG32-MH.

Customer Information

Malaysia



RBAB/57H/0318/S(18-0624)

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0442/ARE/2017
Date d'agrément: 21/11/2017

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR 15193 ANRT 2017
Date d'agrément: 22/11/2017

Pakistan



Date of Issuance: 11/30/2017

Moldova



Paraguay



NR: 2017-12-I-0000413

Customer Information

Serbia

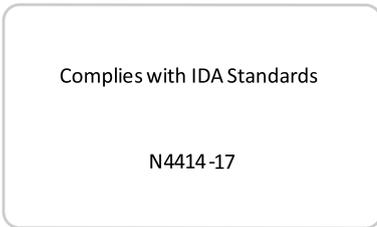


South Korea



MSIP-CMM-pAs-FA-170-BCAR-HS

Singapore



Taiwan



South Africa

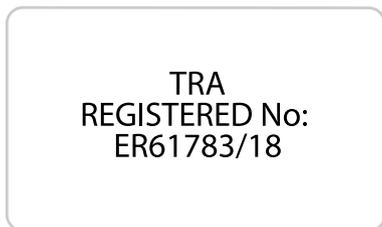


Ukraine



Customer Information

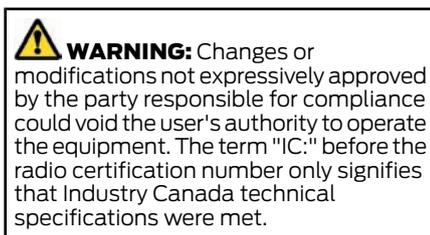
United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



United Kingdom



United States and Canada



| SYNC Version | FCC Identification Number | IC Identification Number |
|--------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 3.0 | ACJ-SYNCG3-L | 216B-SYNCG3-L |
| 3.1 | ACJ-FA-170-BCARHS | 216B-FA170BCARHS |
| 3.2 | ACJ-FG-185-SG32MH | 216B-FG185SG32MH |

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam



Customer Information

Zambia



Europe Union EU



TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Argentina



Mexico



South Africa

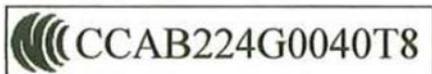
C-28150

Brazil

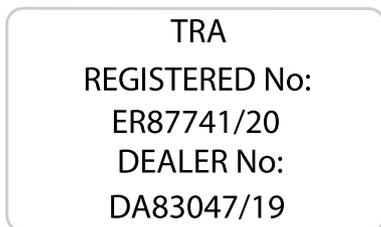


Customer Information

Taiwan



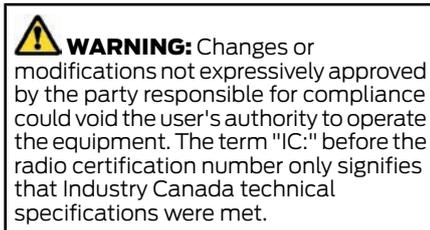
United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



United Kingdom



United States and Canada



FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam



Customer Information

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

Argentina

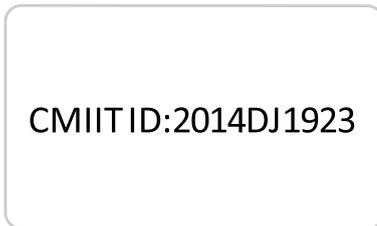


Brazil



18962-22-08001

China



Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HIR -0051/4/2014

Date d'homologation: 16/4/2014

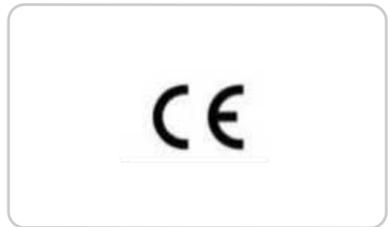
Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 198/MCPT/DDTCC

Date d'agrément : 7/9/2021

European Union (EU)



Customer Information

The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type AG2SZ4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 IQS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 3R88M14030

Independent State of Samoa

SMO
samoa

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-77913
2. זה אישור לבצע פעולת בוכשור שיש בזה כדי לשמור את זכויותי האלחוטיות של הבכשור, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בעל החשב להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Customer Information

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA - AG2SZ4

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0842/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 21/09/2020

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1238



Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

Customer Information

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

Pakistan



Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/1752/14
D090258

Russia



Paraguay



Sierra Leone



NR: 2017-06-I-0000175

TAN: 2017-002-0035

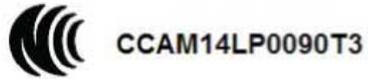
Customer Information

Serbia



MSIP-CRM-SRD-AG2SZ4

Taiwan



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

Thailand

South Africa



TA-2014/064
Approved

- (1) เพื่อใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ ings วิศวกรรมคือตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.
- (2) เครื่องใช้ทุกชิ้นจะต้องได้รับการแก้ไขที่สอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยของสหภาพโทรคมนาคมระหว่างประเทศ (ITU-T) เพื่อรับรองความน่าเชื่อถือของระบบการสื่อสารโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประเทศไทย

South Korea



Ukraine



Customer Information

United Arab Emirates

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER80634/20

DEALER No:

DA83047/19

United Kingdom



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXAG2SZ4

IC: 2546A-AG2SZ4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam



Zambia



Customer Information

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

Argentina



Brazil



Djibouti



AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 133/DDTIC/2021
Date d'agrément : 07/09/2021

Customer Information

European Union EU



This product has been Type Approved By Jamaica:
SMA – WACM3

Jordan

Type Approval No: TRC/LPD/2017/418
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E1-174

Malaysia



NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-110-RDR

SQASI/TA/19/4129
SQASI/TA/21/3832

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA - WACM.

Customer Information

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0474/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 05/03/2018

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0964/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 7/12/2021

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 15474 ANRT 2017
Date d'agrément : 25/12/2017

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00029420 ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 11/07/2021

Moldova



Paraguay



2017-10-I-0000333

2021-08-I-0489

Customer Information

Russia



Serbia



V011 18



V005 21

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa



Customer Information

South Korea



R-RMM-DLH-WACM

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

Taiwan



CCAH17LP1930T0

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER57347/17

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

 CCAH21LP3850T2

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER98640/21

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

Customer Information

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER98639/21

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam

United Kingdom



United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Zambia



FCC ID: L2C0066T
FCC ID: L2C0084T
FCC ID: L2C0074TR
FCC ID: L2C0084TR
IC ID: 3432A-0074TR

Customer Information



REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Customer Information

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in

emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What is eCall** (page 47).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 47).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 48).

Customer Information

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
 - Vehicle Identification Number.
 - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
 - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
 - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.
 - Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
 - Any additional data (if applicable): -
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

Customer Information

- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.
- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
- (1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
- (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
- (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

Customer Information

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
- 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).
- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

Customer Information

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Customer Information

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Customer Information

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.

Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- i. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Customer Information

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Customer Information

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Customer Information

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Customer Information

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Customer Information

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Customer Information

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Customer Information

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Customer Information

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

| | |
|---|--|
| Argentina | IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO” |
| Ecuador | “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®” |
| Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico | “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)” |

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Customer Information

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Customer Information

| | | | |
|---|--|---|--|
| Austria | “© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen” | Spain | “Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG” |
| Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine | “© EuroGeographics” | Sweden | “Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.” |
| France | “source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®” | Switzerland | “Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie. |
| Germany | “Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen” | E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries. | |
| Great Britain | “Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010” | VI. Australia Territory | |
| Greece | “Copyright Geomatics Ltd.” | A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy: | |
| Hungary | “Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.” | Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au). | |
| Italy | “La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.” | | |
| Norway | “Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority” | | |
| Portugal | “Source: IgeoE – Portugal” | | |

Customer Information

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

Customer Information

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Information

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Customer Information

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

Customer Information

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

Customer Information

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

| Website |
|--|
| www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/ |

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

| Website |
|--|
| www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/ |

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **"Suppliers"**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Customer Information

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

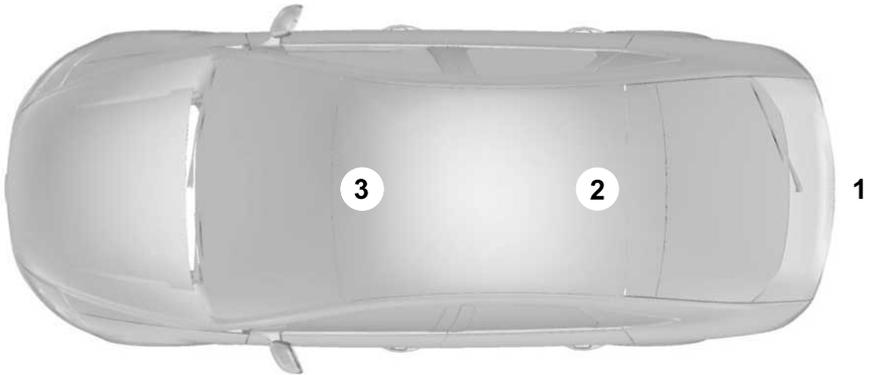


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

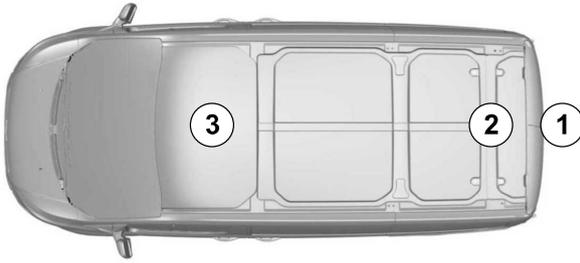
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car/SUV

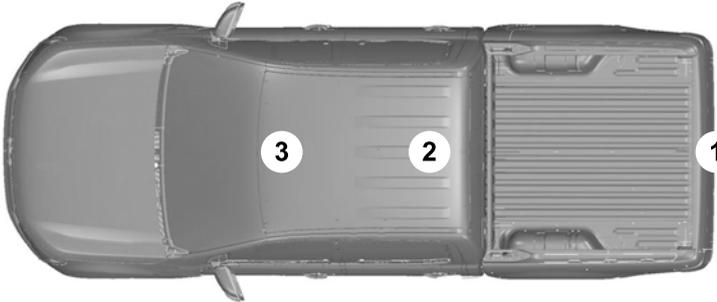


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

| Frequency Band MHz | Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS) | Antenna Positions |
|-------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1-30 | 50 | 1 |
| 50-54 | 50 | 2, 3 |
| 68-87 | 50 | 2, 3 |
| 142-176 | 50 | 2, 3 |
| 380-512 | 50 | 2, 3 |
| 806-870 | 10 | 2, 3 |

Index

1

| | |
|---|-----|
| 12V Battery..... | 370 |
| 12V Battery Precautions..... | 370 |
| Battery Management System | |
| Limitations..... | 371 |
| Changing the 12V Battery..... | 371 |
| How Does the Battery Management | |
| System Work..... | 370 |
| Recycling and Disposing of the 12V | |
| Battery..... | 372 |
| Resetting the Battery Sensor..... | 372 |
| What Is the Battery Management | |
| System..... | 370 |
| 12V Battery – Troubleshooting..... | 372 |
| 12V Battery – Information Messages..... | 373 |
| 12V Battery – Warning Lamps..... | 372 |
| 180 Degree Camera..... | 247 |
| 180 Degree Camera Precautions..... | 247 |

A

A/C

| | |
|--|-----|
| See: Climate Control – Vehicles With: | |
| Automatic Temperature Control..... | 136 |
| See: Climate Control – Vehicles With: Manual | |
| Temperature Control..... | 140 |
| About This Publication..... | 19 |
| ABS | |
| See: Brakes..... | 224 |
| Accessing the Passive Key Backup | |
| Position – Vehicles With: Push Button | |
| Start..... | 173 |
| Accessing the Trip Computer..... | 128 |
| Active Park Assist..... | 248 |
| Active Park Assist – | |
| Troubleshooting..... | 250 |
| Active Park Assist Precautions..... | 248 |
| Active Park Assist – | |
| Troubleshooting..... | 250 |
| Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked | |
| Questions..... | 250 |
| Active Park Assist – Information | |
| Messages..... | 250 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 253 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control – | |
| Troubleshooting..... | 266 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control – | |
| Vehicles With: Intelligent Adaptive Cruise | |
| Control..... | 264 |
| Lane Centering..... | 262 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic | |
| Cancellation – Vehicles With: Adaptive | |
| Cruise Control..... | 256 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic | |
| Cancellation – Vehicles With: Adaptive | |
| Cruise Control With Lane | |
| Centering..... | 256 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators..... | 261 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control | |
| Limitations..... | 254 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control | |
| Precautions..... | 253 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control – | |
| Troubleshooting..... | 266 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control – Information | |
| Messages..... | 266 |
| AdBlue® Capacity and Specification – | |
| 1.5L EcoBlue..... | 417 |
| AdBlue® Capacity and | |
| Specification..... | 210 |
| Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors..... | 112 |
| Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting | |
| Brightness..... | 104 |
| Adjusting the Seatbelt Height..... | 40 |
| Adjusting the Seatbelts During | |
| Pregnancy..... | 39 |
| Adjusting the Sound Settings..... | 425 |
| Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance – | |
| Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument | |
| Cluster Display Screen/SYNC | |
| 2.5..... | 279 |
| Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance – | |
| Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument | |
| Cluster Display Screen/SYNC | |
| 2.5..... | 279 |
| Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance – | |
| Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 279 |
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel..... | 88 |
| Adjusting the Volume..... | 424 |
| Aid Mode..... | 285 |
| How Does Aid Mode Work..... | 285 |
| What Is Aid Mode..... | 285 |
| Airbag Locations..... | 44 |
| Airbag Precautions..... | 43 |

Index

| | | | |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| Airbags..... | 42 | Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror..... | 111 |
| Airbags – Troubleshooting..... | 46 | Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror | |
| Airbags – Troubleshooting..... | 46 | Limitations..... | 111 |
| Airbags – Audible Warnings..... | 46 | What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior | |
| Airbags – Warning Lamps..... | 46 | Mirror..... | 111 |
| Air Conditioning | | Autolamps..... | 98 |
| See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: | | Autolamp Settings..... | 98 |
| Automatic Temperature Control..... | 136 | What Are Autolamps..... | 98 |
| See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual | | Automatic Crash Shutoff..... | 340 |
| Temperature Control..... | 140 | Automatic Crash Shutoff | |
| Alert and Aid Mode..... | 285 | Precautions..... | 340 |
| How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work..... | 285 | Re-Enabling Your Vehicle..... | 340 |
| What Is Alert and Aid Mode..... | 285 | What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff..... | 340 |
| Alert Mode..... | 284 | Automatic Emergency Braking..... | 308 |
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration | | Switching Automatic Emergency Braking | |
| Intensity..... | 284 | On and Off..... | 308 |
| How Does Alert Mode Work..... | 284 | What Is Automatic Emergency | |
| What Is Alert Mode..... | 284 | Braking..... | 308 |
| AM/FM Radio..... | 425 | Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: | |
| AM/FM Radio Limitations..... | 425 | Push Button Start..... | 172 |
| Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station..... | 426 | How Does Automatic Engine Stop | |
| Anti-Lock Braking System..... | 224 | Work..... | 172 |
| Anti-Lock Braking System | | Overriding Automatic Engine Stop..... | 173 |
| Limitations..... | 224 | Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and | |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System..... | 83 | Off..... | 172 |
| Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System..... | 84 | Automatic High Beam Control..... | 101 |
| Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm | | Automatic High Beam Control | |
| System..... | 84 | Indicators..... | 103 |
| How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System | | Automatic High Beam Control | |
| Work..... | 83 | Limitations..... | 102 |
| What Are the Inclination Sensors..... | 83 | Automatic High Beam Control | |
| What Are the Interior Sensors..... | 83 | Precautions..... | 101 |
| What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System..... | 83 | Automatic High Beam Control | |
| What Is the Battery Backup Alarm..... | 84 | Requirements..... | 102 |
| What Is the Perimeter Alarm..... | 83 | How Does Automatic High Beam Control | |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings..... | 84 | Work..... | 101 |
| Setting the Alarm Security Level..... | 84 | Overriding Automatic High Beam | |
| Switching Ask on Exit On and Off..... | 85 | Control..... | 103 |
| What are the Alarm Security Levels..... | 84 | Switching Automatic High Beam Control | |
| What Is Ask on Exit..... | 85 | On and Off..... | 102 |
| Appendices..... | 533 | Automatic High Beam Control – | |
| Applying the Parking Brake..... | 227 | Troubleshooting..... | 103 |
| Apps..... | 447 | Automatic High Beam Control – | |
| Audio System..... | 424 | Information Messages..... | 103 |
| AM/FM Radio..... | 425 | Automatic Transmission Audible | |
| Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio..... | 426 | Warnings..... | 222 |
| Audio System Precautions..... | 424 | Automatic Transmission..... | 219 |
| | | Automatic Transmission Positions..... | 219 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting..... | 223 |
| Brake Shift Interlock..... | 221 |
| Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters..... | 220 |
| Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters..... | 220 |
| Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles Without: Paddle Shifters..... | 220 |
| Automatic Transmission Positions..... | 219 |
| Drive (D)..... | 219 |
| Low (L)..... | 220 |
| Manual (M)..... | 220 |
| Neutral (N)..... | 219 |
| Park (P)..... | 219 |
| Reverse (R)..... | 219 |
| Automatic Transmission Precautions..... | 219 |
| Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters..... | 220 |
| Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting..... | 223 |
| Automatic Transmission – Information Messages..... | 223 |
| Auto Mode..... | 137 |
| Auto Mode Indicators..... | 138 |
| Switching Auto Mode On and Off..... | 137 |
| Autorelock..... | 70 |
| How Does Autorelock Work..... | 70 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning..... | 180 |
| Auto-Start-Stop..... | 179 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Settings..... | 185 |
| Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting..... | 180 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Indicators..... | 180 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Precautions..... | 179 |
| Auto-Start-Stop Settings..... | 185 |
| Setting the Engine Stop Speed..... | 185 |
| Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting..... | 180 |
| Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 181 |
| Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages..... | 180 |
| Autounlock..... | 68 |
| Autounlock Requirements..... | 68 |
| Switching Autounlock On and Off..... | 69 |
| What Is Autounlock..... | 68 |
| Autowipers..... | 91 |
| Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor..... | 91 |
| Autowipers Settings..... | 91 |
| What Are Autowipers..... | 91 |
| B | |
| Blind Spot Assist..... | 286 |
| Blind Spot Assist Indicators..... | 288 |
| Blind Spot Assist Limitations..... | 287 |
| How Does Blind Spot Assist Work..... | 287 |
| What Is Blind Spot Assist..... | 286 |
| Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage..... | 289 |
| Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators..... | 290 |
| Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations..... | 289 |
| How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work..... | 289 |
| What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage..... | 289 |
| Blind Spot Information System..... | 292 |
| Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting..... | 298 |
| Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage..... | 294 |
| Blind Spot Information System Indicators..... | 298 |
| Blind Spot Information System Limitations..... | 292 |
| Blind Spot Information System Precautions..... | 292 |
| Blind Spot Information System Requirements..... | 293 |
| Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting..... | 298 |
| Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages..... | 298 |
| Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage..... | 294 |
| Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations..... | 295 |
| How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work..... | 294 |
| Selecting a Trailer..... | 297 |

Index

| | |
|--|-----|
| Setting a Trailer Length..... | 296 |
| Switching Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage On and Off..... | 295 |
| What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage..... | 294 |
| Body Control Module Fuse Box..... | 354 |
| Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box..... | 354 |
| Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box..... | 354 |
| Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box..... | 354 |
| Bonnet Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood..... | 357 |
| Booster Seats..... | 37 |
| Brake Fluid Specification..... | 225 |
| Brake Over Accelerator..... | 224 |
| Brake Precautions..... | 224 |
| Brakes..... | 224 |
| Anti-Lock Braking System..... | 224 |
| Brakes – Troubleshooting..... | 225 |
| Brake Shift Interlock..... | 221 |
| Brake Shift Interlock Precautions..... | 221 |
| Using Brake Shift Interlock..... | 221 |
| What Is Brake Shift Interlock..... | 221 |
| Brakes – Troubleshooting..... | 225 |
| Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 226 |
| Brakes – Warning Lamps..... | 225 |
| Breaking-In..... | 335 |
| C | |
| Canceling the Set Speed..... | 252 |
| Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering..... | 277 |
| Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering..... | 276 |
| Capacities and Specifications..... | 410 |
| Catalytic Converter..... | 214 |
| Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting..... | 214 |
| Catalytic Converter Precautions..... | 214 |
| Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting..... | 214 |
| Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps..... | 214 |
| Center Console - LHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: ST..... | 28 |
| Center Console - LHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: ST..... | 28 |
| Center Console - RHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: ST..... | 29 |
| Center Console - RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: ST..... | 29 |
| Center Console - ST, LHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid..... | 30 |
| Center Console - ST, LHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid..... | 30 |
| Center Console - ST, RHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid..... | 31 |
| Center Console - ST, RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid..... | 31 |
| Changing a Flat Tire..... | 404 |
| Changing a Road Wheel..... | 404 |
| Changing the Backup Battery..... | 49 |
| Changing the Illuminated Scuff Plate Battery..... | 380 |
| Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition..... | 51 |
| Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start..... | 52 |
| Changing the Set Speed Limit..... | 276 |
| Charging a Device..... | 157 |
| Charging a Wireless Device..... | 162 |
| Checking Local Hazard Information Status - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 275 |
| Checking Local Hazard Information Status - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 275 |
| Checking MyKey System Status - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 59 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Checking MyKey System Status - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 59 |
| Checking MyKey System Status - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 60 |
| Checking the Brake Fluid..... | 224 |
| Checking the Clutch Fluid Level..... | 217 |
| Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 210 |
| Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 210 |
| Checking the Tire Pressures..... | 389 |
| Checking the Wiper Blades..... | 92 |
| Child Restraint Anchor Points..... | 33 |
| Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points..... | 33 |
| Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points..... | 33 |
| What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points..... | 33 |
| Child Restraints..... | 34 |
| Child Restraint Position Information..... | 34 |
| Child Restraints Recommendation..... | 36 |
| Installing Child Restraints..... | 37 |
| Child Safety..... | 32 |
| Child Restraint Anchor Points..... | 33 |
| Child Restraints..... | 34 |
| Child Safety Locks..... | 38 |
| Child Safety Precautions..... | 32 |
| Cigar Lighter..... | 160 |
| Cigar Lighter Precautions..... | 160 |
| Cleaning the Exterior..... | 383 |
| Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors..... | 384 |
| Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel..... | 383 |
| Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps..... | 383 |
| Cleaning Stripes or Graphics..... | 384 |
| Cleaning the Engine Compartment..... | 384 |
| Cleaning the Exterior Precautions..... | 383 |
| Cleaning the Underbody..... | 384 |
| Cleaning Wheels..... | 383 |
| Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades..... | 383 |
| Cleaning the Interior..... | 384 |
| Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats..... | 386 |
| Cleaning Displays and Screens..... | 385 |
| Cleaning Fabric..... | 385 |
| Cleaning Leather..... | 385 |
| Cleaning Moonroof Tracks..... | 386 |
| Cleaning Plastic..... | 385 |
| Cleaning Seatbelts..... | 386 |
| Cleaning Storage Compartments..... | 386 |
| Cleaning the Instrument Panel..... | 384 |
| Cleaning Vinyl..... | 386 |
| Clearing All MyKeys - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 59 |
| Clearing All MyKeys - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 59 |
| Clearing All MyKeys - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 59 |
| Climate..... | 438 |
| Climate Control..... | 136 |
| Auto Mode..... | 137 |
| Directing the Flow of Air..... | 137 |
| Climate Control Hints..... | 138 |
| Closing the Liftgate..... | 76 |
| Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate..... | 78 |
| Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle..... | 76 |
| Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle..... | 77 |
| Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control..... | 77 |
| Clutch Fluid Specification..... | 217 |
| Cold Weather Precautions..... | 335 |
| Configuring the Trip Computer..... | 128 |
| Connected Vehicle..... | 421 |
| Connected Vehicle - Troubleshooting..... | 422 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network..... | 421 |
| Connected Vehicle Data..... | 22 |
| Connected Vehicle Limitations..... | 421 |
| Connected Vehicle Requirements..... | 421 |

Index

| | |
|--|-----|
| Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting..... | 422 |
| Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 422 |
| Connecting a Trailer..... | 327 |
| Tow Ball..... | 327 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network..... | 421 |
| Connecting FordPass to the Modem..... | 421 |
| Enabling and Disabling the Modem..... | 421 |
| What Is the Modem..... | 421 |
| Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network..... | 421 |
| Coolant..... | 366 |
| Adding Coolant..... | 367 |
| Changing the Coolant..... | 368 |
| Checking the Coolant Level..... | 366 |
| Coolant – Information Messages..... | 369 |
| Coolant Precautions..... | 366 |
| Coolant – Warning Lamps..... | 369 |
| Managing the Coolant Temperature..... | 368 |
| Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™..... | 412 |
| Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue..... | 413 |
| Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™..... | 414 |
| Crash and Breakdown Information..... | 338 |
| Automatic Crash Shutoff..... | 340 |
| Fail-Safe Cooling..... | 342 |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle..... | 338 |
| Post-Crash Alert System..... | 339 |
| Post Impact Braking..... | 340 |
| Recovery Towing..... | 341 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Push Button Start/SYNC 2.5..... | 57 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5/Keyed Ignition..... | 56 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Push Button Start/SYNC 2.5..... | 57 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5/Keyed Ignition..... | 56 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/Keyed Ignition..... | 56 |
| Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/Push Button Start..... | 58 |
| Cross Traffic Alert..... | 299 |
| Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting..... | 302 |
| Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage..... | 301 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Indicators..... | 301 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Limitations..... | 299 |
| Cross Traffic Alert Precautions..... | 299 |
| Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting..... | 302 |
| Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages..... | 302 |
| Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage..... | 301 |
| Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations..... | 301 |
| What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage..... | 301 |
| Cross Traffic Braking..... | 229 |
| Cross Traffic Braking – Troubleshooting..... | 230 |
| Cross Traffic Braking Indicators..... | 230 |
| Cross Traffic Braking Precautions..... | 229 |
| Cross Traffic Braking – Troubleshooting..... | 230 |
| Cross Traffic Braking – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 231 |
| Cross Traffic Braking – Information Messages..... | 230 |
| Cruise Control..... | 251 |
| Cruise Control Indicators..... | 252 |
| Cup Holders..... | 163 |
| Cup Holder Precautions..... | 163 |
| Customer Information..... | 460 |
| Radio Frequency Certification Labels..... | 460 |
| Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)..... | 123 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Customizing the Instrument Cluster | |
| Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)..... | 123 |
| D | |
| Data Privacy..... | 20 |
| Declaration of Conformity..... | 460 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter..... | 204 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting..... | 205 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions..... | 204 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements..... | 205 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting..... | 205 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages..... | 206 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps..... | 205 |
| Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio..... | 426 |
| Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations..... | 427 |
| Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station..... | 427 |
| What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio..... | 426 |
| Directing the Flow of Air..... | 137 |
| Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents..... | 137 |
| Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents..... | 137 |
| Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents..... | 137 |
| Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode..... | 273 |
| Distance Alert..... | 307 |
| Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert..... | 307 |
| What Is Distance Alert..... | 307 |
| Distance Indication..... | 306 |
| Distance Indication Indicator..... | 306 |
| Switching Distance Indication On and Off..... | 306 |
| What Is Distance Indication..... | 306 |
| Door Lock Indicators..... | 70 |
| Door Lock Switch Inhibitor..... | 68 |
| How Does the Door Lock Switch Inhibitor Work..... | 68 |
| Doors and Locks Audible Warnings..... | 70 |
| Doors and Locks..... | 64 |
| Autorelock..... | 70 |
| Autounlock..... | 68 |
| Door Lock Switch Inhibitor..... | 68 |
| Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting..... | 70 |
| Mislock..... | 69 |
| Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle..... | 66 |
| Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle..... | 64 |
| Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting..... | 70 |
| Doors and Locks – Information Messages..... | 70 |
| Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps..... | 70 |
| Drive Mode Control..... | 269 |
| Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting..... | 270 |
| Drive Modes..... | 269 |
| Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting..... | 270 |
| Drive Mode Control – Information Messages..... | 270 |
| Drive Modes..... | 269 |
| Eco..... | 269 |
| Normal..... | 269 |
| Slippery..... | 269 |
| Sport..... | 269 |
| Track..... | 269 |
| Trail..... | 270 |
| Driver Alert..... | 312 |
| Driver Alert – Troubleshooting..... | 313 |
| Driver Alert Precautions..... | 312 |
| Driver Alert – Troubleshooting..... | 313 |
| Driver Alert – Information Messages..... | 313 |
| Driving Economically..... | 335 |
| Driving Hints..... | 335 |
| Driving Through Shallow Water..... | 335 |
| E | |
| eCall..... | 47 |
| eCall – Troubleshooting..... | 49 |
| eCall – Troubleshooting..... | 49 |
| eCall – Information Messages..... | 49 |

Index

| | | | |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| eCall User Information..... | 503 | Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space..... | 249 |
| Eco Coach..... | 271 | Entertainment..... | 436 |
| Efficient Drive Mode..... | 273 | Environment..... | 24 |
| Trip Summary..... | 273 | Evasive Steering Assist..... | 309 |
| Efficient Drive Mode Indicators..... | 274 | Evasive Steering Assist Limitations..... | 309 |
| Electromagnetic Compatibility..... | 533 | Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off..... | 309 |
| Emergency Call Indicators..... | 48 | What Is Evasive Steering Assist..... | 309 |
| Emergency Call Limitations..... | 47 | Event Data..... | 21 |
| Emergency Call Requirements..... | 47 | Exiting a Parking Space..... | 249 |
| Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall..... | 23 | Exterior Bulbs..... | 374 |
| Emergency Equipment..... | 346 | Changing a Mirror Turn Signal Lamp Bulb..... | 377 |
| Emergency Towing..... | 344 | Changing a Rear Fog Lamp Bulb..... | 376 |
| Enabling Local Hazard Information..... | 275 | Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp Bulb..... | 378 |
| Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 130 | Changing a Reversing Lamp Bulb..... | 379 |
| Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 130 | Exterior Bulb Specification Chart..... | 374 |
| Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 130 | Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly..... | 375 |
| End User License Agreement..... | 507 | Exterior Lamps..... | 98 |
| Engine Block Heater..... | 169 | Exterior Lamp Indicators..... | 100 |
| Engine Block Heater Precautions..... | 169 | Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning..... | 101 |
| How Does the Engine Block Heater Work..... | 169 | How Do Cornering Lamps Work..... | 99 |
| Using the Engine Block Heater..... | 169 | Switching the Parking Lamps On and Off..... | 99 |
| Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge..... | 117 | Using the Front Fog Lamps..... | 100 |
| Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel..... | 366 | Using the Rear Fog Lamps..... | 100 |
| Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline..... | 366 | Using the Turn Signal Lamps..... | 98 |
| Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™..... | 411 | Exterior Lighting Control..... | 96 |
| Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue..... | 411 | Exterior Lighting..... | 96 |
| Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™..... | 412 | Autolamps..... | 98 |
| Engine Oil..... | 364 | Automatic High Beam Control..... | 101 |
| Adding Engine Oil..... | 365 | Automatic High Beam Control - Troubleshooting..... | 103 |
| Checking the Engine Oil Level..... | 364 | Exterior Lamps..... | 98 |
| Engine Oil Capacity and Specification..... | 365 | Headlamps..... | 96 |
| Engine Oil Dipstick Overview..... | 364 | Headlamps - Troubleshooting..... | 97 |
| Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor..... | 365 | Exterior Mirrors..... | 112 |
| Entering a Parallel Parking Space..... | 248 | F | |
| | | Fail-Safe Cooling..... | 342 |
| | | Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated..... | 342 |
| | | Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators..... | 343 |
| | | How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work..... | 342 |
| | | What Is Fail-Safe Cooling..... | 342 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Fan | |
| See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel..... | 366 |
| See: Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline..... | 366 |
| Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts..... | 39 |
| Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank..... | 208 |
| Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank in Cold Weather..... | 208 |
| Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump..... | 208 |
| Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Portable Container..... | 209 |
| Flat Tire | |
| See: Changing a Flat Tire..... | 404 |
| Floor Mats..... | 336 |
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Power Fold Exterior Mirrors/SYNC 2.5..... | 112 |
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/Power Fold Exterior Mirrors/SYNC 2.5..... | 112 |
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors..... | 113 |
| Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors/ SYNC 3..... | 113 |
| Forward Collision Warning..... | 307 |
| Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning..... | 307 |
| What is Forward Collision Warning..... | 307 |
| Front Parking Aid..... | 239 |
| Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings..... | 240 |
| Front Parking Aid Limitations..... | 240 |
| Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors..... | 240 |
| What is the Front Parking Aid..... | 239 |
| Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings..... | 203 |
| Fuel and Refueling..... | 192 |
| Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting..... | 203 |
| Fuel Quality..... | 193 |
| Refueling..... | 195 |
| Running Out of Fuel..... | 194 |
| Fuel and Refueling Precautions..... | 192 |
| Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting..... | 203 |
| Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages..... | 203 |
| Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps..... | 203 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™..... | 200 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBlue..... | 201 |
| Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™..... | 202 |
| Fuel Consumption Regulations..... | 200 |
| Fuel Economy Display..... | 124 |
| Fuel Gauge..... | 116 |
| Fuel Gauge Limitations..... | 117 |
| Locating the Fuel Filler Door..... | 117 |
| What is Distance to Empty..... | 117 |
| What is the Fuel Gauge..... | 116 |
| What is the Low Fuel Reminder..... | 117 |
| Fuel Quality..... | 193 |
| Selecting the Correct Fuel..... | 193 |
| Switching Between E85 and Gasoline..... | 194 |
| Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.0L EcoBoost™..... | 197 |
| Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBlue..... | 198 |
| Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBoost™..... | 199 |
| Fuse Precautions..... | 348 |
| Fuses..... | 348 |
| Body Control Module Fuse Box..... | 354 |
| Fuses – Troubleshooting..... | 356 |
| Under Hood Fuse Box..... | 348 |
| Fuses – Troubleshooting..... | 356 |
| Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 356 |
| G | |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter..... | 215 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting..... | 215 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions..... | 215 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements..... | 215 |

Index

| | |
|--|-----|
| Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting..... | 215 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter – Information Messages..... | 216 |
| Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps..... | 215 |
| Global Opening and Closing..... | 107 |
| Switching Global Closing On and Off..... | 108 |
| Switching Global Opening On and Off..... | 108 |
| Using Global Closing..... | 108 |
| Using Global Opening..... | 108 |
| What Is Global Opening and Closing..... | 107 |
| H | |
| Headlamps..... | 96 |
| Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps..... | 97 |
| Headlamp Indicators..... | 97 |
| Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off..... | 96 |
| Using the High Beam Headlamps..... | 96 |
| Headlamps – Troubleshooting..... | 97 |
| Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 97 |
| Headrest | |
| See: Head Restraints..... | 143 |
| Head Restraints..... | 143 |
| Heated Seats..... | 150 |
| Heating | |
| See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control..... | 136 |
| See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control..... | 140 |
| Hill Start Assist..... | 232 |
| Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting..... | 233 |
| Hill Start Assist Precautions..... | 232 |
| Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting..... | 233 |
| Hill Start Assist – Information Messages..... | 233 |
| Hood Lock | |
| See: Opening and Closing the Hood..... | 357 |
| How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering..... | 253 |
| How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 253 |
| How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work..... | 178 |
| How Does Blind Spot Information System Work..... | 292 |
| How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work..... | 299 |
| How Does Cross Traffic Braking Work..... | 229 |
| How Does Driver Alert Work..... | 312 |
| How Does eCall Work..... | 47 |
| How Does Eco Coach Work..... | 271 |
| How Does Hill Start Assist Work..... | 232 |
| How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work..... | 271 |
| How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work..... | 304 |
| How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work..... | 303 |
| How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work..... | 314 |
| How Does Stability Control Work..... | 236 |
| How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work..... | 247 |
| How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work..... | 204 |
| How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work..... | 215 |
| How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work..... | 278 |
| How Does the Lane Keeping System Work..... | 282 |
| How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work..... | 155 |
| How Does the Speed Limiter Work..... | 276 |
| How Does Traction Control Work..... | 234 |
| How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work..... | 317 |
| How Does Trip Summary Work - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 272 |
| How Does Trip Summary Work - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 271 |
| How Does Wrong Way Alert Work..... | 320 |
| How Do the Front Airbags Work..... | 42 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| How Do the Side Airbags Work..... | 42 |
| How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work..... | 43 |
| Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics..... | 178 |
| Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators..... | 178 |
| Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information..... | 178 |
| I | |
| Identifying Fuse Types..... | 356 |
| Ignition Switch..... | 165 |
| Inflating the Tires..... | 389 |
| Inspecting the Tire for Damage..... | 393 |
| Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover..... | 324 |
| Instrument Cluster Display..... | 122 |
| Personalized Settings..... | 123 |
| Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu..... | 122 |
| Instrument Cluster Indicators..... | 119 |
| Instrument Cluster..... | 115 |
| Fuel Gauge..... | 116 |
| Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 116 |
| Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 115 |
| Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps..... | 117 |
| Instrument Panel - LHD..... | 26 |
| Instrument Panel - RHD..... | 27 |
| Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 264 |
| How Does Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Work..... | 264 |
| Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Alerts..... | 265 |
| Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators..... | 265 |
| Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations..... | 265 |
| Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions..... | 265 |
| Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off..... | 265 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings..... | 280 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators..... | 280 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter..... | 278 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting..... | 281 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions..... | 278 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting..... | 281 |
| Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 281 |
| Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit..... | 277 |
| Interior Bulbs..... | 379 |
| Interior Bulb Specification Chart..... | 379 |
| Interior Lamp Function..... | 104 |
| Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off..... | 104 |
| What Is the Interior Lamp Function..... | 104 |
| Interior Lighting..... | 104 |
| Interior Lamp Function..... | 104 |
| Interior Mirror..... | 111 |
| Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror..... | 111 |
| Interior Mirror Precautions..... | 111 |
| Introduction..... | 19 |
| J | |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle..... | 338 |
| Jump Starting Precautions..... | 338 |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle..... | 338 |
| Preparing the Vehicle..... | 338 |
| K | |
| Keyless Entry..... | 71 |
| Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting..... | 73 |
| Keyless Entry Limitations..... | 71 |
| Keyless Entry Settings - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 71 |
| Keyless Entry Settings - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 71 |
| Keyless Entry Settings - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 72 |

Index

| | |
|--|-----|
| Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting..... | 73 |
| Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 73 |
| Keys and Remote Controls..... | 50 |
| Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting..... | 54 |
| Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting..... | 54 |
| Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages..... | 54 |
| L | |
| Lane Centering..... | 262 |
| How Does Lane Centering Work..... | 262 |
| Lane Centering Alerts..... | 263 |
| Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation..... | 263 |
| Lane Centering Indicators..... | 264 |
| Lane Centering Limitations..... | 263 |
| Lane Centering Precautions..... | 262 |
| Lane Centering Requirements..... | 262 |
| Switching Lane Centering On and Off..... | 263 |
| Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 286 |
| Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 286 |
| Lane Keeping System..... | 282 |
| Aid Mode..... | 285 |
| Alert and Aid Mode..... | 285 |
| Alert Mode..... | 284 |
| Blind Spot Assist..... | 286 |
| Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage..... | 289 |
| Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting..... | 291 |
| Lane Keeping System Limitations..... | 283 |
| Lane Keeping System Precautions..... | 282 |
| Lane Keeping System Settings..... | 284 |
| Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting..... | 291 |
| Lane Keeping System – Information Messages..... | 291 |
| Launch Control Indicators..... | 382 |
| Launch Control..... | 382 |
| Launch Control Limitations..... | 382 |
| Launch Control Precautions..... | 382 |
| Liftgate..... | 74 |
| Closing the Liftgate..... | 76 |
| Liftgate – Troubleshooting..... | 79 |
| Opening the Liftgate..... | 74 |
| Liftgate Obstacle Detection..... | 79 |
| Liftgate Precautions..... | 74 |
| Liftgate – Troubleshooting..... | 79 |
| Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 80 |
| Liftgate – Information Messages..... | 79 |
| Liftgate – Warning Lamps..... | 79 |
| Load Carrying..... | 322 |
| Roof Rack..... | 322 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Carrier..... | 323 |
| Load Carrying Precautions..... | 322 |
| Loading Your Trailer..... | 331 |
| Local Hazard Information..... | 275 |
| Local Hazard Information Precautions..... | 275 |
| Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors..... | 294 |
| Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir..... | 224 |
| Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors..... | 301 |
| Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel..... | 194 |
| Locating the Power Outlets..... | 159 |
| Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 305 |
| Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 305 |
| Locating the Rear View Camera..... | 244 |
| Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit..... | 395 |
| Locating the USB Ports..... | 157 |
| Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger..... | 161 |
| Locating Your Vehicle..... | 51 |
| Locking the Rear Window Controls..... | 110 |
| Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition..... | 88 |
| Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start..... | 89 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Luggage Compartment Anchor Points..... | 325 |
| Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points..... | 326 |
| Luggage Compartment Anchor Point Precautions..... | 325 |
| Luggage Compartment..... | 324 |
| Luggage Compartment Anchor Points..... | 325 |
| Luggage Compartment Precautions..... | 324 |
| M | |
| Maintenance..... | 357 |
| 12V Battery..... | 370 |
| 12V Battery – Troubleshooting..... | 372 |
| Coolant..... | 366 |
| Engine Oil..... | 364 |
| Exterior Bulbs..... | 374 |
| Interior Bulbs..... | 379 |
| Maintenance Precautions..... | 357 |
| Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror..... | 111 |
| Manually Making an Emergency Call..... | 47 |
| Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters..... | 220 |
| Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters..... | 220 |
| Manual Seats - Vehicles With: Manual Lumbar..... | 145 |
| Manual Seats - Vehicles With: Massage Seats..... | 146 |
| Manual Seats - Vehicles Without: Manual Lumbar..... | 144 |
| Manual Transmission..... | 217 |
| Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting..... | 218 |
| Manual Transmission Precautions..... | 217 |
| Manual Transmission Shift Indicators..... | 217 |
| Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting..... | 218 |
| Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 218 |
| Mislock..... | 69 |
| How Does Mislock Work..... | 69 |
| Mislock Limitations..... | 69 |
| Switching Mislock On and Off..... | 69 |
| What Is Mislock..... | 69 |
| Mobile Communications Equipment..... | 502 |
| Mobile Device Data..... | 22 |
| Moonroof Bounce-Back..... | 114 |
| Overriding Moonroof Bounce-Back..... | 114 |
| What Is Moonroof Bounce-Back..... | 114 |
| Moonroof..... | 114 |
| Moonroof Bounce-Back..... | 114 |
| Muting the Audio..... | 424 |
| MyKey Settings..... | 55 |
| Configurable MyKey Settings..... | 55 |
| Non-Configurable MyKey Settings..... | 55 |
| MyKey – Troubleshooting..... | 60 |
| MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 62 |
| MyKey – Information Messages..... | 60 |
| MyKey™..... | 55 |
| MyKey Settings..... | 55 |
| MyKey – Troubleshooting..... | 60 |
| N | |
| Navigation..... | 443 |
| O | |
| Opening and Closing the Flip Key - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition..... | 50 |
| Opening and Closing the Hood..... | 357 |
| Opening and Closing the Moonroof..... | 114 |
| Opening and Closing the Sunshade..... | 114 |
| Opening and Closing the Windows..... | 107 |
| Opening the Liftgate..... | 74 |
| Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate..... | 75 |
| Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle..... | 74 |
| Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle..... | 74 |
| Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control..... | 75 |
| Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle..... | 66 |
| Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking..... | 66 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle..... | 64 |
| Double Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade..... | 65 |
| Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control..... | 65 |
| Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade..... | 66 |
| Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade..... | 64 |
| Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control..... | 64 |
| Overriding Cross Traffic Braking..... | 230 |
| Overriding the Set Speed..... | 260 |

P

| | |
|--|-----|
| Parking Aid Indicators..... | 242 |
| Parking Aid Precautions..... | 238 |
| Parking Aids..... | 238 |
| Front Parking Aid..... | 239 |
| Parking Aids – Troubleshooting..... | 242 |
| Rear Parking Aid..... | 239 |
| Side Parking Aid..... | 240 |
| Parking Aids – Troubleshooting..... | 242 |
| Parking Aids – Information Messages..... | 242 |
| Parking Brake Audible Warning..... | 227 |
| Parking Brake..... | 227 |
| Parking Brake – Troubleshooting..... | 227 |
| Parking Brake – Troubleshooting..... | 227 |
| Parking Brake – Information Messages..... | 227 |
| Parking Brake – Warning Lamps..... | 227 |
| Passenger Airbag Indicators..... | 44 |
| Passive Anti-Theft System..... | 83 |
| Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System..... | 83 |
| Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft System..... | 83 |
| What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System..... | 83 |
| Personalized Settings..... | 123 |
| Changing the Instrument Cluster Display Language..... | 123 |
| Changing the Measurement Unit..... | 123 |
| Changing the Temperature Unit..... | 123 |
| Changing the Tire Pressure Unit..... | 124 |
| Switching the Instrument Cluster Display Audible Warnings On and Off..... | 124 |
| Phone..... | 441 |
| Playing Media Using the USB Port..... | 157 |
| Playing or Pausing the Audio Source..... | 424 |
| Post-Crash Alert System..... | 339 |
| How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work..... | 339 |
| Post-Crash Alert System Limitations..... | 340 |
| Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off..... | 340 |
| What Is the Post-Crash Alert System..... | 339 |
| Post Impact Braking..... | 340 |
| How Does Post Impact Braking Work..... | 340 |
| Overriding Post Impact Braking..... | 340 |
| Post Impact Braking Indicators..... | 340 |
| Post Impact Braking Limitations..... | 340 |
| Power Outlet..... | 159 |
| Power Outlet Precautions..... | 159 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Limitations..... | 304 |
| Pre-Collision Assist Precautions..... | 304 |
| Pre-Collision Assist..... | 303 |
| Automatic Emergency Braking..... | 308 |
| Distance Alert..... | 307 |
| Distance Indication..... | 306 |
| Evasive Steering Assist..... | 309 |
| Forward Collision Warning..... | 307 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting..... | 310 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting..... | 310 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages..... | 310 |
| Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps..... | 310 |
| Programming a MyKey - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 58 |
| Programming a MyKey - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 58 |
| Programming a MyKey - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 58 |
| Programming the Remote Control..... | 54 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Protecting the Environment..... | 24 |
| Puncture | |
| See: Changing a Flat Tire..... | 404 |
| Push Button Ignition Switch..... | 166 |
| R | |
| Radio Frequency Certification | |
| Labels..... | 460 |
| Antennas..... | 460 |
| Blind Spot Information System | |
| Sensors..... | 461 |
| Body Control Module..... | 467 |
| Cruise Control Module..... | 472 |
| Keys and Remote Controls..... | 476 |
| Passive Anti-Theft System..... | 478 |
| Radio Transceiver Module..... | 481 |
| SYNC..... | 483 |
| Telematics Control Unit..... | 488 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System | |
| Sensors..... | 490 |
| Wireless Accessory Charging | |
| Module..... | 496 |
| REACH..... | 460 |
| Rear Cross Traffic Braking | |
| See: Cross Traffic Braking..... | 229 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System Audible | |
| Warnings..... | 156 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System | |
| Indicators..... | 156 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System | |
| Limitations..... | 155 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System | |
| Precautions..... | 155 |
| Rear Occupant Alert System..... | 155 |
| Rear Parking Aid..... | 239 |
| Locating the Rear Parking Aid | |
| Sensors..... | 239 |
| Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings..... | 239 |
| Rear Parking Aid Limitations..... | 239 |
| What is the Rear Parking Aid..... | 239 |
| Rear Seats..... | 149 |
| Rear View Camera Guide Lines..... | 244 |
| Rear View Camera Limitations..... | 244 |
| Rear View Camera Precautions..... | 244 |
| Rear View Camera..... | 244 |
| Rear View Camera Settings..... | 245 |
| Rear View Camera Settings..... | 245 |
| Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and | |
| Off..... | 246 |
| Switching Rear View Camera Object | |
| Distance Indicator On and Off..... | 246 |
| Zooming the Rear View Camera In and | |
| Out..... | 245 |
| Recovery Towing..... | 341 |
| Accessing the Rear Towing Point..... | 341 |
| Installing the Towing Eye..... | 341 |
| Locating the Towing Eye..... | 341 |
| Refueling..... | 195 |
| Refueling System Overview..... | 195 |
| Refueling Your Vehicle..... | 196 |
| Releasing the Parking Brake..... | 227 |
| Remote Control Limitations..... | 50 |
| Remotely Starting and Stopping the | |
| Vehicle..... | 130 |
| Remote Start Limitations..... | 130 |
| Remote Start..... | 130 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: | |
| 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display | |
| Screen/Heated Steering Wheel/SYNC | |
| 2.5..... | 133 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: | |
| 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display | |
| Screen/SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: | |
| Heated Steering Wheel..... | 131 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: | |
| 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display | |
| Screen/Heated Steering Wheel/SYNC | |
| 2.5..... | 133 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: | |
| 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display | |
| Screen/SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: | |
| Heated Steering Wheel..... | 131 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: | |
| Heated Steering Wheel/SYNC 3..... | 134 |
| Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: | |
| SYNC 3, Vehicles Without: Heated | |
| Steering Wheel..... | 132 |
| Removable Seat Covers..... | 150 |
| Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: | |
| Push Button Start..... | 50 |
| Repairing Minor Paint Damage..... | 387 |
| Replacement Parts | |
| Recommendation..... | 502 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control..... | 54 |
| Replacing the Front Wiper Blades..... | 92 |
| Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades..... | 93 |
| Reprogramming the Unlocking Function - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 67 |
| Reprogramming the Unlocking Function - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 66 |
| Reprogramming the Unlocking Function - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 67 |
| Resetting the Individual Trip Values..... | 128 |
| Resetting the Trip Computer..... | 128 |
| Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 401 |
| Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 401 |
| Restarting the Engine..... | 179 |
| Resuming the Set Speed Limit..... | 277 |
| Resuming the Set Speed..... | 252 |
| Reverse Wipe..... | 92 |
| Reverse Wipe Settings..... | 92 |
| What Is Reverse Wipe..... | 92 |
| Roof Rack..... | 322 |
| Roof Rack Load Capacities..... | 323 |
| Roof Rack Precautions..... | 322 |
| Running-In See: Breaking-In..... | 335 |
| Running Out of Fuel..... | 194 |
| Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container..... | 194 |
| Filling a Portable Fuel Container..... | 194 |
| S | |
| Scrolling Through Menu Items..... | 425 |
| Seatbelt Precautions..... | 39 |
| Seatbelt Reminder..... | 40 |
| Checking Seatbelt Status..... | 41 |
| Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings..... | 40 |
| Seatbelt Reminder Indicators..... | 40 |
| Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off..... | 40 |
| Seatbelts..... | 39 |
| Seatbelt Reminder..... | 40 |
| Seatbelts – Troubleshooting..... | 41 |
| Seatbelts – Troubleshooting..... | 41 |
| Seatbelts – Information Messages..... | 41 |
| Seats..... | 143 |
| Security..... | 83 |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System..... | 83 |
| Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings..... | 84 |
| Passive Anti-Theft System..... | 83 |
| Security – Troubleshooting..... | 86 |
| Security – Troubleshooting..... | 86 |
| Security – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 87 |
| Security – Information Messages..... | 86 |
| Selecting a Drive Mode - Excluding: ST..... | 269 |
| Selecting a Drive Mode - ST..... | 269 |
| Selecting a Menu Item..... | 425 |
| Selecting the Audio Source..... | 424 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption..... | 210 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines..... | 207 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions..... | 207 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements..... | 207 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System..... | 207 |
| Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank..... | 208 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting..... | 211 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting..... | 211 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 213 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages..... | 211 |
| Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps..... | 211 |
| Service Data..... | 21 |
| Setting a Memory Preset..... | 424 |
| Settings Data..... | 22 |
| Settings..... | 448 |

Index

| | |
|--|-----|
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 258 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering..... | 259 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 257 |
| Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering..... | 257 |
| Setting the Blower Motor Speed..... | 137 |
| Setting the Clock and Date..... | 425 |
| Setting the Cruise Control Speed..... | 251 |
| Setting the Liftgate Opening Height..... | 76 |
| Setting the Speed Limit..... | 276 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 316 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 315 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 316 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 315 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 315 |
| Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 315 |
| Setting the Temperature..... | 137 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 319 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 318 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 319 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 318 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 318 |
| Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 318 |
| Shifting Into Reverse..... | 217 |
| Side Parking Aid..... | 240 |
| Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors..... | 241 |
| Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings..... | 241 |
| Side Parking Aid Limitations..... | 240 |
| What is the Side Parking Aid..... | 240 |
| Sitting in the Correct Position..... | 143 |
| Speed Control See: Cruise Control..... | 251 |
| Speed Limiter Audible Warnings..... | 277 |
| Speed Limiter Indicators..... | 277 |
| Speed Limiter Precautions..... | 276 |
| Speed Limiter..... | 276 |
| Speedometer..... | 116 |
| Speed Sign Recognition Indicators..... | 314 |
| Speed Sign Recognition Limitations..... | 314 |
| Speed Sign Recognition Precautions..... | 314 |
| Speed Sign Recognition..... | 314 |
| Speed Sign Recognition - Troubleshooting..... | 316 |
| Speed Sign Recognition - Troubleshooting..... | 316 |
| Speed Sign Recognition - Information Messages..... | 316 |
| Stability Control Indicator - ST..... | 237 |
| Stability Control..... | 236 |
| Stability Control - Troubleshooting - ST..... | 237 |

Index

| | |
|---|-----|
| Stability Control – Troubleshooting – ST..... | 237 |
| Stability Control – Information Messages..... | 237 |
| Stability Control – Warning Lamps..... | 237 |
| Starter Switch See: Ignition Switch..... | 165 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions..... | 165 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine..... | 165 |
| Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start..... | 172 |
| Engine Block Heater..... | 169 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting..... | 173 |
| Starting the Engine..... | 166 |
| Stopping the Engine..... | 170 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting..... | 173 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 175 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages..... | 174 |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps..... | 173 |
| Starting the Engine..... | 166 |
| Restarting the Engine After Stopping It..... | 168 |
| Starting a Diesel Engine..... | 167 |
| Starting a Gasoline Engine..... | 166 |
| Steering Wheel - Excluding: ST..... | 25 |
| Steering Wheel..... | 88 |
| Steering Wheel - ST..... | 25 |
| Stopping the Engine..... | 179 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving..... | 171 |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary..... | 170 |
| Stopping the Liftgate Movement..... | 78 |
| Storage..... | 163 |
| Cup Holders..... | 163 |
| Under Floor Storage..... | 163 |
| Storing a First Aid Kit - Vehicles With: Mini Spare Wheel..... | 346 |
| Storing a First Aid Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit, Vehicles Without: High Output Amplifier and Subwoofer..... | 346 |
| Storing a First Aid Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit/High Output Amplifier and Subwoofer..... | 346 |
| Storing a Warning Triangle - Vehicles With: Mini Spare Wheel..... | 347 |
| Storing a Warning Triangle - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit, Vehicles Without: High Output Amplifier and Subwoofer..... | 346 |
| Storing a Warning Triangle - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit/High Output Amplifier and Subwoofer..... | 347 |
| Sunroof See: Moonroof..... | 114 |
| Switching Active Park Assist On and Off..... | 248 |
| Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off..... | 256 |
| Switching Air Conditioning On and Off..... | 136 |
| Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off..... | 104 |
| Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off..... | 179 |
| Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 293 |
| Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 293 |
| Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 293 |
| Switching Climate Control On and Off..... | 136 |
| Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 300 |
| Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 300 |
| Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 300 |

Index

| | |
|--|-----|
| Switching Cross Traffic Braking On and Off..... | 230 |
| Switching Cruise Control On and Off..... | 251 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 313 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 312 |
| Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 313 |
| Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 273 |
| Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 273 |
| Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 261 |
| Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 261 |
| Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 262 |
| Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 281 |
| Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 280 |
| Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 281 |
| Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 233 |
| Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 232 |
| Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 233 |
| Switching Launch Control On and Off..... | 382 |
| Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off..... | 136 |
| Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off..... | 136 |
| Switching Parking Aid On and Off..... | 238 |
| Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off..... | 155 |
| Switching Recirculated Air On and Off..... | 136 |
| Switching Stability Control On and Off - Excluding: ST..... | 236 |
| Switching Stability Control On and Off - ST..... | 236 |
| Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off..... | 247 |
| Switching the Audio Unit On and Off..... | 424 |
| Switching the Display On and Off..... | 426 |
| Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off..... | 105 |
| Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off..... | 338 |
| Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off..... | 137 |
| Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off..... | 136 |
| Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off..... | 89 |
| Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off..... | 136 |
| Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering..... | 278 |
| Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering..... | 278 |

Index

| | |
|--|-----|
| Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 284 |
| Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen..... | 283 |
| Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off..... | 283 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 45 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 45 |
| Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 46 |
| Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 76 |
| Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 76 |
| Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 76 |
| Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off..... | 104 |
| Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off..... | 92 |
| Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering..... | 276 |
| Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering..... | 276 |
| Switching Traction Control On and Off - Excluding: ST..... | 234 |
| Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 321 |
| Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5..... | 320 |
| Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3..... | 321 |
| SYNC™ 3..... | 428 |
| General Information..... | 428 |
| SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting..... | 450 |
| T | |
| Tachometer..... | 116 |
| Technical Specifications See: Capacities and Specifications..... | 410 |
| Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment..... | 460 |
| Tire Care..... | 389 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations..... | 400 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions..... | 400 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System..... | 400 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting..... | 402 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting..... | 402 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages..... | 403 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps..... | 402 |
| Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: ST..... | 389 |
| Tire Pressure Specifications - ST..... | 391 |
| Tire Rotation..... | 393 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components..... | 395 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions..... | 395 |
| Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit..... | 395 |
| Tow Ball..... | 327 |
| Attaching the Tow Ball Arm..... | 329 |
| Detaching the Tow Ball Arm..... | 329 |
| Tow Ball Components..... | 328 |
| Tow Ball Precautions..... | 327 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Carrier..... | 323 |
| Tow Bar Mounted Load Capacities..... | 323 |
| Towing a Trailer Limitations..... | 331 |
| Towing a Trailer Precautions..... | 331 |
| Towing a Trailer..... | 331 |
| Towing Weights and Dimensions..... | 332 |
| Towing Weights and Dimensions..... | 332 |
| Tow Bar Dimensions..... | 333 |
| Towing Weight Capacities..... | 332 |

Index

| | | | |
|---|-----|---|-----|
| Towing Your Vehicle Precautions..... | 344 | Under Hood Fuse Box..... | 348 |
| Towing Your Vehicle..... | 344 | Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box..... | 348 |
| Track Use Precautions - 1.0L EcoBoost™, 7-Speed Automatic Transmission..... | 381 | Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box..... | 349 |
| Track Use Precautions - 1.5L EcoBoost™..... | 381 | Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box..... | 348 |
| Track Use..... | 381 | Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, LHD..... | 358 |
| Traction Control Indicator..... | 234 | Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, RHD..... | 359 |
| Traction Control..... | 234 | Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue, LHD..... | 360 |
| Traction Control – Troubleshooting - Excluding: ST..... | 234 | Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue, RHD..... | 361 |
| Traction Control – Troubleshooting - Excluding: ST..... | 234 | Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, LHD..... | 362 |
| Traction Control – Information Messages..... | 235 | Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, RHD..... | 363 |
| Traction Control – Warning Lamps..... | 234 | USB Ports..... | 157 |
| Traction Sign Recognition Indicators..... | 317 | Using Keyless Entry..... | 72 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations..... | 317 | Using Launch Control..... | 382 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions..... | 317 | Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems..... | 60 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition..... | 317 | Using Snow Chains..... | 388 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting..... | 319 | Using Summer Tires..... | 388 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting..... | 319 | Using the Cigar Lighter..... | 160 |
| Traffic Sign Recognition – Information Messages..... | 319 | Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls..... | 122 |
| Trailer Towing Hints..... | 332 | Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit..... | 396 |
| Trip Computer..... | 128 | Using This Publication..... | 19 |
| Trip Data..... | 128 | Using Voice Recognition..... | 430 |
| Trip Summary..... | 124 | Using Winter Tires..... | 388 |
| How Does Trip Summary Work..... | 273 | | |
| Viewing the Trip Summary..... | 273 | V | |
| Tyre Pressure Specifications | | Vehicle Care..... | 383 |
| See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Excluding: ST..... | 389 | Cleaning the Exterior..... | 383 |
| See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - ST..... | 391 | Cleaning the Interior..... | 384 |
| | | Vehicle Dimensions..... | 410 |
| U | | Vehicle Identification Number..... | 419 |
| Under Floor Storage..... | 163 | Locating the Vehicle Identification Number..... | 419 |
| Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Floor..... | 163 | Vehicle Identification Plate..... | 419 |
| Locating the Luggage Compartment Under Floor Storage..... | 163 | Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate..... | 419 |
| | | Vehicle Identification Plate Overview..... | 419 |
| | | Vehicle Identification..... | 419 |
| | | Vehicle Identification Number..... | 419 |

Index

| | | | |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| Vehicle Identification Plate..... | 419 | What Is a Connected Vehicle..... | 421 |
| Ventilation | | What Is Active Park Assist..... | 248 |
| See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: | | What Is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle..... | 178 |
| Automatic Temperature Control..... | 136 | What Is Auto-Start-Stop..... | 179 |
| See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual | | What Is Blind Spot Information | |
| Temperature Control..... | 140 | System..... | 292 |
| Venting the Moonroof..... | 114 | What Is Cross Traffic Alert..... | 299 |
| Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency | | What Is Cross Traffic Braking..... | 229 |
| Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch | | What Is Cruise Control..... | 251 |
| Instrument Cluster Display | | What Is Drive Mode Control..... | 269 |
| Screen..... | 271 | What Is Hill Start Assist..... | 312 |
| Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency | | What Is eCall..... | 47 |
| Level - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch | | What Is Eco Coach..... | 271 |
| Instrument Cluster Display | | What Is Efficient Drive Mode..... | 273 |
| Screen..... | 271 | What Is Hill Start Assist..... | 232 |
| Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles | | What Is Keyless Entry..... | 71 |
| With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster | | What Is Launch Control..... | 382 |
| Display Screen..... | 401 | What Is Local Hazard Information..... | 275 |
| Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles | | What Is MyKey..... | 55 |
| With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster | | What Is Pre-Collision Assist..... | 303 |
| Display Screen..... | 400 | What Is Remote Start..... | 130 |
| Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles | | What Is Speed Sign Recognition..... | 314 |
| With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster | | What Is Stability Control..... | 236 |
| Display Screen..... | 272 | What Is the 180 Degree Camera..... | 247 |
| Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles | | What Is the Catalytic Converter..... | 214 |
| With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster | | What Is the Diesel Particulate | |
| Display Screen..... | 272 | Filter..... | 204 |
| Visual Search..... | 25 | What Is the Gasoline Particulate | |
| W | | Filter..... | 215 |
| Warnings and Notes Used in This | | What Is the Intelligent Speed | |
| Publication..... | 19 | Limiter..... | 278 |
| Washer Fluid Specification..... | 417 | What Is the Lane Keeping System..... | 282 |
| Washers..... | 93 | What Is the Power Outlet..... | 159 |
| Adding Washer Fluid..... | 94 | What Is the Rear Occupant Alert | |
| Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and | | System..... | 155 |
| Off..... | 94 | What Is the Rear View Camera..... | 244 |
| Using the Rear Window Washer..... | 94 | What Is the Selective Catalytic | |
| Using the Windshield Washer..... | 94 | Reduction System..... | 207 |
| Washer Precautions..... | 93 | What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring | |
| Washers | | System..... | 400 |
| See: Wipers and Washers..... | 90 | What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator | |
| Waxing Your Vehicle..... | 387 | Kit..... | 395 |
| What Are the Instrument Cluster | | What Is the Wireless Accessory | |
| Indicators..... | 119 | Charger..... | 161 |
| What Are the Instrument Cluster | | What Is Traction Control..... | 234 |
| Warning Lamps..... | 117 | What Is Traffic Sign Recognition..... | 317 |
| | | What Is Wrong Way Alert..... | 320 |
| | | Wheel and Tire Information..... | 388 |

Index

| | |
|--|-----|
| Wheel Nuts..... | 409 |
| Wi Fi | |
| See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network..... | 421 |
| Window Bounce-Back..... | 109 |
| Overriding Window Bounce-Back..... | 109 |
| Resetting Window Bounce-Back..... | 109 |
| What Is Window Bounce-Back..... | 109 |
| Windows..... | 107 |
| Global Opening and Closing..... | 107 |
| Window Bounce-Back..... | 109 |
| Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting..... | 95 |
| Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions..... | 95 |
| Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps..... | 95 |
| Wipers and Washers..... | 90 |
| Autowipers..... | 91 |
| Reverse Wipe..... | 92 |
| Washers..... | 93 |
| Wipers..... | 90 |
| Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting..... | 95 |
| Wipers..... | 90 |
| Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off..... | 90 |
| Wiper Precautions..... | 90 |
| Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions..... | 161 |
| Wireless Accessory Charger..... | 161 |
| Wrong Way Alert Limitations..... | 320 |
| Wrong Way Alert Precautions..... | 320 |
| Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting..... | 321 |
| Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages..... | 321 |
| Wrong Way Alert..... | 320 |
| Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting..... | 321 |

